



## **Internal and Customer Announcement Letters**

**December 15, 1987**



# Announcement Index

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

The summary and full text of letters are available on HONE.

## System/370 Architecture Based Systems

- 287-545 Cooperative Software Program - Connex (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)
- 287-548 IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing
- 287-551 Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 Available
- 287-552 IBM Licensed Programs Maintenance Extension (*HONE only*)
- 287-568 IBM Data Base Relational Application Directory for VM/System Product (DBRAD/VM) Program Offering Available
- 487-118 RACF Installation (H3837) (*HONE only on December 1, 1987*)

## General/Distributed Systems

- 187-231 IBM Series/1, 72 Megabyte Disk Drive Features (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)
- 187-235 IBM 5340 System/34 MESs Withdrawal from Marketing
- 187-236 IBM 3505 Card Reader and IBM 3525 Card Punch Withdrawal from Marketing
- 287-546 IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 Availability (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)
- 287-547 IBM System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms Specify Option
- 287-565 Program Offering, Print Services Facility/36 Version 1 Release 1
- 387-227 IBM ASKINFO Functional Enhancements

## Storage, I/O and Related Equipment

- 187-234 IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement
- 287-561 Print Services Facility/Virtual Machine Version 1 Release 1.1
- 287-562 Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed Monotype Garamond Fonts for Advanced Function Printing One-Time Charge
- 287-566 Remote PrintManager Update Provides IBM Personal System/2™ Support
- 387-221 Price Changes IBM 3820 Page Printer

## Communications

- 287-554 IBM Inter-System Control Facility/PC Available
- 287-555 IBM Inter-System Control Facility for MVS/XA and MVS/370 Availability
- 287-556 NetView/Access Services Version 1 Release 1.0 SNA Application Monitor Version 1 Release 1.2 Available

287-563 IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program Availability and Additional Function

387-217 IBM 3299 Terminal Multiplexer Maintenance Agreement Service

## **Workstations**

187-232 IBM 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0 (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)

187-233 IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40 (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)

287-543 PROFESSIONAL CADAM <sup>1</sup> Release 2.0 (*announced via HONE on November 24, 1987*)

287-544 MICRO CADAM <sup>1</sup> Repackaged and Repriced (*announced via HONE on December 1, 1987*)

287-549 IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

387-224 InfoWindow Support for Personal System/2™ Models 50 and 60

487-119 Discover/ Education Course Code Changes (*HONE only*)

## **Application Offerings**

287-553 DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 Availability with Additional Function

387-226 ASKINFO Major Function Support Enhancements

## **Industry-Specific Offerings**

187-237 Enhancements for the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit

187-238 IBM 4683 Selected Special Features Withdrawal from Marketing

187-239 Withdrawal of Selected Store Systems Products from Marketing

187-240 IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Models, Displays, and Enhancements

287-550 IBM Licensed Programs Withdrawal from Marketing and Discontinuance of Program Services (*announced via HONE on December 8, 1987*)

287-557 IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 Enhancements and Availability

287-558 IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 Availability

287-559 IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature

287-560 IBM 4680 Support for COBOL

287-564 IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2

287-567 Get Set for Writing to Read™ School Kit Available

387-215 Personal System/2™ Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter® III Printer (5202-001), Operating System/2™ Standard Edition and Selected Features Available through the IBM Education Order Center (*announced via HONE on November 24, 1987*)

387-219 Revised Exhibit-Alternative Certification for IBM Machines

387-220 IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner VPA Withdrawal

387-222 Price Changes IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program

387-223 Price Change IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner

## **General Interest**

- 387-216      Withdrawal from Marketing**
- 387-218      IBM System/88 Trial Program Extended**
- 387-225      Withdrawal from Marketing Program Service Changes**
- 487-116      Withdrawal of Selected Technical Update Series Videotapes (*HONE only*)**
- 487-117      Technical Update Series Videotapes -- New Ordering Procedures (*HONE only*)**
- 487-120      Price Changes for IBM Education Courses (*HONE only*)**

<sup>1</sup>    *Trademark of CADAM INC*

<sup>TM</sup>   *Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.*

<sup>®</sup>   *Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.*





# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM Series/1, 72 Megabyte Disk Drive Features

New 72Mb disk drives for the IBM 4956 Processor Models G10, H10 and J00 and IBM 4965 Storage and I/O Expansion Unit Model E00 extend the 5-1/4 inch DASD offering for the IBM Series/1.

### Purchase Prices:

Basic 72Mb Disk (#4171) <sup>1</sup>	\$ 380
Second 72Mb Disk (#4172) <sup>2</sup>	2,900
Third 72Mb Disk (#4173) <sup>2</sup>	2,900
Basic 72Mb Disk (#4174) <sup>3</sup>	3,000

<sup>1</sup> Plant installation only

<sup>2</sup> Plant or field installation

<sup>3</sup> Field installation only

Planned General Availability: February 1988

For 4956 Models G10, H10, J00 and 4965 Model E00  
#4171, #4172, #4173, #4174

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD
  - IBM Authorized Value Added Remarketers (VARs)

#### Product Positioning

The 72Mb disk offers added DASD storage and improved price performance over the present 40Mb disk.

#### Marketing Action Required

Update bids and proposals that could reflect this improved DASD storage. In systems applications where data vital to the conduct of business could be lost as a result of a disk malfunction, customers should be urged to consider appropriate redundancy of their disk files and/or save-restore capability and procedures. Use of this device in a continual power-on environment may adversely affect its useful life.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal Series/1 provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 4956" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

Information on available standard support is in HONE under SUPPORTINFO.

For customer briefing, SNAPSHOT sessions, and account planning sessions, contact Boca Raton Marketing Center.

Series/1 publications will be updated.

#### Installation Information

##### Installation Support

Installation and technical support will be provided by National Technical Support - Series/1 Technical Support, Boca Raton, FL.

**Field Support:** Systems engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSYSTEM and HONE EQUAL. Systems engineers are to research their questions in HONE INFOSYSTEM using the key word "4956", with the Series/1 area designated specialist, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

**Systems Assurance:** A branch office review is required for the first system installation at a customer location. A Systems Assurance Product Review (SAPR) Guide will be available from the branch office systems assurance coordinator and through HONE INFOSYSTEM (S G SAPR Series/1) to support the installation planning and systems assurance review activities.

#### Administrative Information

##### Ordering Information

Orders may be entered into AAS immediately. Shipping dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders involving multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. No delivery commitments are to be made to customers until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

MES orders for field installation will be accepted immediately. Shipping schedules will be acknowledged within 30 days of receipt of the MES in the plant. General availability will be February 1988.

## AAS Order Control Code

Name	Types	Models	Feature
Basic Disk 72Mb	4956 <sup>1</sup>	G10/H10/J00	4171
Second Disk 72Mb	4956 <sup>2</sup>	G10/H10/J00	4172
Third Disk 72Mb	4956 <sup>2</sup>	G10/H10/J00	4173
Basic Disk 72Mb	4956 <sup>3</sup>	G10/H10/J00	4174
Basic Disk 72Mb	4965 <sup>1</sup>	E00	4171
Second Disk 72Mb	4965 <sup>2</sup>	E00	4172
Third Disk 72Mb	4965 <sup>2</sup>	E00	4173
Basic Disk 72Mb	4965 <sup>3</sup>	E00	4174

<sup>1</sup> Plant installation only

<sup>2</sup> Plant or field installation

<sup>3</sup> Field installation only

### Request for Price Quotation

Requests for RPQs will be accepted immediately and processing will begin in 90 days. Response time and delivery are dependent upon complexity.

### Sponsoring Executive

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM Series/1, 72 Megabyte Disk Drive Features

New 72Mb disk drives for the IBM 4956 Processor Models G10, H10 and J00 and IBM 4965 Storage and I/O Expansion Unit Model E00 extend the 5-1/4 inch DASD offering for the IBM Series/1.

### Purchase Prices:

Basic 72Mb Disk (#4171) <sup>1</sup>	\$ 380
Second 72Mb Disk (#4172) <sup>2</sup>	2,900
Third 72Mb Disk (#4173) <sup>2</sup>	2,900
Basic 72Mb Disk (#4174) <sup>3</sup>	3,000

<sup>1</sup> Plant installation only

<sup>2</sup> Plant or field installation

<sup>3</sup> Field installation only

**Planned General Availability: February 1988**

**For 4956 Models G10, H10, J00 and 4965 Model E00  
#4171, #4172, #4173, #4174**

### Highlights

- Up to three 72Mb 5-1/4" disks
- Field installable
- Intermix of 72Mb and 40Mb disks
- 400Kb dynamic and self optimizing disk cache

### Description

The 72Mb disks are available as optional features for the 4956 Models G10, H10 and J00 and the 4965 Model E00. If the 4956 or 4965 is ordered from the plant with a 72Mb basic disk, #4171 will be installed in lieu of a 40Mb disk. For field installation of a basic 72Mb disk, #4174 is required. The second and third 72Mb disks (#4172 and #4173) may be plant or field installed. Removed 40Mb disks remain the property of the customer. The 72Mb disks attach via a file control card through an industry interface ST-506.

### Publications

The following publications are shipped with the 4956 or 4965, depending upon the model ordered.

- IBM Series/1 4965 Storage and I/O Expansion Unit Model E00 Description (GA34-0805)
- IBM Series/1 4965 Storage and I/O Expansion Unit Model E00 Maintenance Information (SY34-0503)

- IBM Series/1 4965 Storage and I/O Expansion Unit Model E00 Parts Catalog (S134-0020)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Models G10 and H10 Description (GA34-0305)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Models G10 and H10 Maintenance Information (SY34-0357)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Models G10 and H10 Parts Catalog (S134-0112)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Model J00 Description (GA34-0850)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Model J00 Maintenance Information (SY34-0550)
- IBM Series/1 4956 Processor Model J00 Parts Catalog (S134-0115)

Updated publications containing information about this new 72Mb disk drive can be ordered after general availability. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

### Schedule

General availability is planned for February 1988.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The 72Mb disks require a 4956 Model G10, H10 or J00 or 4965 Model E00. The basic 72Mb Disk (#4171) is for plant installation only. If it is not ordered, the 4956 or 4965 will be shipped with a 40Mb disk. #4174 is for field installation of a basic 72Mb disk on a 4956 or 4965 to replace a basic 40Mb disk. The second and third 72Mb disks (#4172 and #4173) can be plant or field installed. Removed 40Mb disks remain the property of the customer.

The 72Mb and 40Mb disks are 5-1/4" and cannot be interchanged with or replace an 8" disk.

**Programming Requirements:** RPS Version 7.2, EDX Version 5.2 or 6.0.

**Compatibility:** The 40Mb disks (#4115 and #4116) and 72Mb disk (#4171, #4172, #4173 and #4174) have the same interface, ST 506, and therefore can be mixed in the same machine type.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

## Planning Information

**Physical Planning Assistance:** Available from the National Service Division on an hourly service basis.

**Installability:** The Basic 72Mb Disk (#4171) is for plant installation only. For upgrades from a 40Mb disk to a 72Mb disk it is recommended that the second 40Mb disk (#4115) be replaced first, then the third 40Mb disk (#4116) be replaced. If additional storage is then required, the first 40Mb disk is replaced by the basic 72Mb disk (#4174).

**Packaging:** The 72Mb disk feature is normally mounted in a machine type 4956 or 4965 which is shipped with a diagnostic diskette and Description, Parts Catalog and Maintenance Information manuals.

### Security, Auditability, and Control

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

### Terms and Conditions

**Field Installable Features:** #4172, #4173 and #4174 are field installable. #4171 is plant installable only.

**Volume Purchase Discount:** These features are eligible for volume discount under VPA Exhibit ISYS-X.

All other terms and conditions are the same as those applicable to the 4956 and 4965.

## Charges

	Feature Number	Purchase Price	Monthly Rental Charge	Monthly Minimum Maintenance Charge
For 4956 Mdl's G10, H10 J00, 4965 Mdl E00				
72Mb Disk				
Basic <sup>1</sup>	4171	\$380	\$35	*
Second <sup>2</sup>	4172	2,900	265	\$23
Third <sup>2</sup>	4173	2,900	265	23
Basic <sup>3</sup>	4174	3,000	275	23

<sup>1</sup> Plant installation only, see "Description"

<sup>2</sup> Plant or field installation

<sup>3</sup> Field installation only

\* Included in maintenance charge for base 4956 Model G10, H10 or J00, or 4965 Model E00.

### Feature Removal Charges

	Feature Number	Charge
72Mb Disk		
Basic	4171	\$270
Second	4172	270
Third	4173	270
Basic	4174	270
40Mb Disk		
Basic	4111	\$270
Second	4115	270
Third	4116	270



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0

The 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0 are new members of the IBM 3270 Information Display System featuring the new Data Entry, 104-key Keyboard.

**Purchase Prices:** 3191-A40 - \$1,295; 3191-B40 - \$1,295;  
3191-AD0 - \$1,235; 3191-BD0 - \$1,235

**Planned Availability Date:** February 1988

	3-Year Warranty Model	3-Month Warranty Model
3191 Display Station		
Data Entry 104-Key Keyboard		
Green Phosphor	A40	AD0
Amber-Gold Phosphor	B40	BD0

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
  - SWMD
  - NDD
- 4300 and 9370 Value Added Remarketers

#### Product Positioning

The IBM 3191 Models A40 and B40 are intended for users with a requirement for a Data Entry Keyboard.

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should review this announcement with all customers who have a 3191 on order or who have an IBM Workstation VPA Exhibit (32WS-X) with a Category A quantity commitment or IBM Workstations and Related I/O VPA Exhibit (WKSX-X).

All outstanding proposals that include a 3191 should be reviewed and updated.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** The measurement value (MV) is available on HONE by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 3191" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

**MAP/CMO Demonstration System Discount Program:** To support Marketing Assistance Program Participants (MAP) and Complementary Marketing Organization Program participants (CMO) who want to purchase a demonstrator unit of the IBM 3191, an offering at the following percentage discounts is available under the terms and conditions of the MAP/CMO Demonstration System Discount Program.

Machine	3-Year Warranty Model	3-Month Warranty Model	Percent Discount
3191	A40	AD0	34%
3191	B40	BD0	34%

**Loaners/Demonstrations:** Contact the area office for IBM 3191 loaner machines to which the 104-key Data Entry Keyboard can be attached. Areas will order and provide data entry keyboards for loaners/demonstrations as required.

### HONE Information

Proposal material will be available through HONE.

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by the Dallas National Marketing and Technical Support Center, Irving, Texas.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialist(s) for technical marketing assistance. Systems engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSYSTEM and HONE EQUAL. Systems engineers should research their questions in INFOSYSTEM using the search word "3191", with the branch specialist, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

### Administrative Information

**Maintenance Processing:** This will be the responsibility of NSD and the maintenance data base will be IMI.

## Ordering Information

Orders may be entered into AAS beginning immediately. Shipping dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders involving multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. No delivery commitments are to be made to customers until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

On-order 3191s (all models) may be altered to the 3191 Models A40/AD0 or B40/BD0. The original order entry sequence will be retained for scheduling purposes. However, an alteration may result in a deferral of the estimated shipment date to the availability date of the new models.

### AAS Order Control Code:

	3-Year Warranty Model	3-Month Warranty Model
3191 Display Station		
104-Key Data Entry Keyboard		
Green Phosphor	A40	AD0
Amber-Gold Phosphor	B40	BD0

Note: For 3191 Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0 installed in Chicago, specify #9986 for a 6-foot power cord (P/N 6952298), available as no charge only at initial order.

Individual elements can be ordered by specifying part number using AAS mnemonic MSORDER. (Category = Accessory, supplies, group = DP supplies).

Element	Part Numbers
Video (Green)	83X7939
Video (Amber-Gold)	83X7944
Logic	6238033
Keyboard (U.S. English, Data Entry- 104-KEY)	73X3891
Pedestal	6238060
Line Cord-2.8M (9.0 foot)	6952297
Line Cord-1.8M (6.0 foot)	6952298

### Accessories

#### Key Blanks for Security

Keylock (10)*	
for keys labelled A00-A99	6238059
for keys labelled D00-D99	64X9944

\* Duplicate keys may be made locally from these key blanks.

### Request for Price Quotation

Requests for RPQs will not be accepted.

### Sponsoring Executive

W. P. Lyons  
Director, Workstations Product Management

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0

The 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0 are new members of the IBM 3270 Information Display System featuring the new Data Entry, 104-key Keyboard.

**Purchase Prices:** 3191-A40 - \$1,295; 3191-B40 - \$1,295;  
3191-AD0 - \$1,235; 3191-BD0 - \$1,235

**Planned Availability Date:** February 1988

	3-Year Warranty Model	3-Month Warranty Model
<b>3191 Display Station</b>		
<b>Data Entry 104-Key Keyboard</b>		
Green Phosphor	A40	AD0
Amber-Gold Phosphor	B40	BD0

### Highlights

- 104-key, Data Entry, U.S. English Keyboard
- Low profile keyboard with coiled cable providing three angles of inclination 4°, 12°, or 18°)
- All other 3191 functions supported
- Three-year warranty or three-month warranty models available

### Description

The new models provide a 104-key Data Entry keyboard for users with a Data Entry requirement. All other 3191 functions are supported.

The units consist of the following workstation elements:

	3-Year Warranty Models	3-Month Warranty Models
Video (green)	A40	AD0
(amber-gold)	B40	BD0
Logic	A40, B40	AD0, BD0
Data Entry Keyboard	A40, B40	AD0, BD0
Pedestal	A40, B40	AD0, BD0
Power Cord	A40, B40	AD0, BD0

### Publications

The following publications are available:

- IBM 3191 Display Station Description (GA18-2457)
- IBM 3191 Display Station User's Guide (GA18-2454)\*
- IBM 3191 Display Station Setup Instructions (GA18-2458)\*
- IBM 3191 Display Station Problem Solving Guide 1 (GA18-2455)\*
- IBM 3191 Display Station Problem Solving Guide 2 (GA18-2456)\*
- IBM 3191 Display Station Repair Center Maintenance Information (SY18-2152)

\* Copy shipped with each machine.

Customers should order the IBM 3191 Display Station Description (GA18-2457) for site planning and preparation work prior to delivery of the 3191.

Additional copies are available. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

### Schedule

Planned availability of the 3191 Models A40, B40, AD0, and BD0 is February 1988

### Technical Information

#### Physical Specifications

	Width mm (in)	Depth mm (in)	Height mm (in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Video Element	310 (12.2)	307 (12.1)	290 (11.4)	7.9 (17.4)
Logic Element	280 (11.0)	250 (9.8)	44 (1.7)	1.2 (2.6)
Keyboard	419 (16.5)	204 (8.0)	30 (1.2)*	1.8 (4.0)
Element-104-Key				

#### Specified Operating Environment

Operating environments of configurable I/O units are different.

- IBM 3191 Models A and B

Class C: 10°- 40.6°C (50°-105°F); 8-80% Relative Humidity

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

- Power ratings and line cord:
  - Power -- 120V AC, 1-phase, 3-wire, 60Hz
  - 2.8 meter (9.0 foot) line cord with non-locking plug is standard. A 1.8 meter (6-foot) line cord with non-locking plug is also available.

**Machine Requirements:** The 3191 attaches to the following IBM systems via an available Type A Adapter on an IBM 3174 or 3274 Control Unit.

S/360	43XX
S/370	8100
303X	937X*
308X	S/36
3090	S/38

\* Also attaches to 937X via the Workstation Subsystem Controller.

Attachment is by the same type of coax cable as is used to attach an IBM 3178, 3179-1, 3180-1, 3192, 3278, or 3279. Attachment may also be made by twisted pair cable that has been approved for display attachment.

The 3191 Models A40/B40/AD0/BD0 operate in native keyboard mode only. Native keyboard mode operations require attachment to a 3174, 3274 Control Unit with Configuration Support D - Microcode Release 63 or higher, or to the 937X Workstation Subsystem Controller.

**Programming Requirements:** The 3191 is datastream compatible with the 3178. All host programs which operate with the 3178 will operate with the 3191 in exactly the same way.

**Compatibility:** The new 3191 is datastream compatible with today's 3178 displays in alphanumeric host application environments.

The 3191 will accept 3270 datastream and will run existing alphanumeric applications unmodified (in their current screen size). No programming changes are required of current alphanumeric applications unless required hardware functions are not available with the 3191, e.g., magnetic readers, encryption/decryption, or unsupported screen sizes.

**Compatibility:** The data entry layout of the 3191 keyboards is compatible with the 3180 Model 1 data entry layout with the PF keys on top of the keyboard. If 3178 data entry PF key positioning is required, the keyboard will have to be modified using the Keyboard Definition Utility.

**Limitations:** The following are not available:

- RQPs
- Magnetic reader control and accessories
- Monocase switch
- Video output

**Cable Orders:** IBM shielded twisted pair cable or coaxial cable is required for product attachment. The customer is responsible for installation and maintenance of the cable and associated accessories.

- Twisted pair cable - For proper identification, installation, and application of cable and associated accessories, refer to IBM Cabling System - Planning and Installation Guide (GA27-3361). For pricing and ordering information, refer to the appropriate IBM DIRECT catalog.

- Coaxial Cable - For proper identification, installation and application of cable and associated accessories, refer to IBM 3270 Installation Manual - Physical Planning (GA27-2787).

### Planning Information

The customer should have on hand or should order the IBM 3191 Display Station Description (GA18-2544) for site planning and preparation work.

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for:

- Adequate site, system, and other vendor preparation.
- Receipt at the customer's receiving dock, unpacking, and placement of the unit.
- Physical set-up, connection of cables in customer access area, switch settings, and checkout.
- Contacting IBM service for attachment of the 3191 communications cable to an on-site serviced IBM control unit where customer access area is not provided.
- Determination of the required number of spares.

The number of spare units is dependent upon the number of the 3191 units the customer has installed, the application requirements, physical locations, and layout. Determination of the required number of spares is a customer responsibility.

The customer should be advised to test spares for correct operation before putting them on the shelf. Spares can be ordered as a complete machine or as individual elements.

- Using the Problem Solving Guide (GA18-2455 and GA18-2456) prior to calling for service. Call the Service/Exchange Communication Center (S/ECC), 1-800-458-2569, toll-free for service.
- Returning security keys to IBM if any repair service of Logic Element is required. (If the keys are not returned to IBM, the customer will be charged for the replacement of the security keys and locks on a time and material basis).
- Ordering the IBM 3191 Display Station Description (GA18-2457) for site planning and preparation work since it is not shipped with each machine.

**Installability:** The 3191 is a Customer Set-Up machine. The IBM 3191 Display Station Setup Instructions (GA18-2458) are included with each machine.

**Problem Determination:** The Operator Reference and Problem Solving Guide contain self-test and diagnostic procedures which assist the customer in isolating a defective machine element. The failing element can then be replaced calling the Service/Exchange Communication Center.

**Packaging:** The 3191 is shipped in a single shipping carton with the individual elements packaged in separate cartons. The Set-up Instructions (GA18-2458), User's Guide (GA18-2454), and Problem Solving Guides (GA18-2455 and GA18-2456) are included in this packaging.



**Keys:** The 3191 is shipped with two keys. If both keys are lost, the tumbler assembly must be replaced. This service is available on an hourly service basis. For additional/replacement keys, see Accessories.

#### Security, Auditability, and Control

Data security functions provided by the 3191 are non-displayed field control (specified in the attribute byte) and the security keylock. User management is responsible for implementation of these functions. If sensitive data is sent over external communications facilities, user management may wish to pursue the application of cryptography. For more information on data security controls, see Data Security Controls and Procedures (G320-5649).

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

#### Terms and Conditions

**Volume Purchase Discount:** Volume purchasing is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) to Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines. The 3191 is in Category A, Discount Group 2 of the Workstations and Related I/O Exhibit (WKSX-X) and in Category A, Discount Group 3 of the IBM Workstations VPA Exhibit (32WS-X).

Customers with an existing VPA with a commitment in Category A of the Workstations VPA Exhibit (32WS-X) may order the IBM 3191 Models A40, B40, AD0, and BD0 as additional quantities to, or as direct substitutes for, other machines in the same category subject to availability.

For further information regarding volume orders, contact your IBM marketing representative.

**IBM Credit Corporation Financing:** The 3191 is eligible for a range of IBM Credit Corporation term leases and installment payment plans for commercial and state and local government customers.

**Eligible Machine under Alternative Certification for IBM Machines:** Yes.

**Warranty Period:** 3 years or 3 months

**Type of Service:** IBM On-site Exchange (IOE)

**Machine Group:** A

**IBM Hourly Service Rate Classification:** 1

Service may be obtained by calling the IBM Service/Exchange Communications Center's toll free number 1-800-428-2569.

**Product Availability Status:** New product available.

**Customer Set-Up (CSU):** Yes. CSU Allowance is one day. IBM setup is available at the applicable IBM hourly service rates and minimum charges.

**Pre-Installation Test Allowance:** None

**On-Site Allowance:** None

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

#### Corporate Service Amendment (Exhibit CSA00X):

Network Machine Type	Discount Percent		
	1 yr	2 yrs	3 yrs
3191	15%	25%	30%

**Mid-Range System Amendment (MRSA):** The 3191 Models A40 and B40 are currently eligible for MRSA. The discount percent is as follows:

Agreement Option	Percent
3 Years	17%
5 Years	22%

#### Charges

	Model	Purchase Price	Annual Minimum Maintenance Charge IOE
3191 Display Station	A40 (a)	\$1,295	\$40
	B40 (a)	1,295	40
	AD0 (b)	1,235	40
	BD0 (b)	1,235	40

(a) Three-year warranty  
(b) Three-month warranty

#### Machine Element Charges

Description	Part Number	Purchase and Element Exchange Price
Video (Green)	83X7939	\$320
Video (Amber-Gold)	83X7944	320
Logic	6238033	650
Keyboard (U.S. English, Data Entry- 104-KEY)	73X3891	295
Pedestal	6238060	20
Line Cord-2.8M (9.0 foot)	6952297	10
Line Cord-1.8M (6.0 foot)	6952298	10

#### Accessories

##### Key Blanks for Security

Keylock (10)*		
for keys labelled A00-A99	6238059	5
for keys labelled D00-D99	64X9944	5

\* Duplicate keys may be made locally from these key blanks.

Customers may order accessories by calling IBM Direct Response Operations, 1-800-IBM-2468.



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40

The IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40/DG0 is for use with the IBM System/36, System/38, and the IBM 5294 Remote Control Unit. It is the newest model of the 15-inch, green phosphor monochrome CRT display station, and provides the new 122-key, Data Entry Keyboard.

**Purchase Prices:** 3197-D40 \$1,795  
3197-GD0 1,895

**Planned Availability Date:** February 1988

	1-Year Warranty Model	3-Year Warranty Model
3197 Display Station Data Entry 122-Key Keyboard Green Phosphor	D40	DG0

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD
  - IBM System/36 Dealers
  - IBM System/36 VADs
  - IBM System/36 VARs
  - IBM System/38 VARs

#### Product Positioning

The 3197 Model D40/DG0 adds a data entry keyboard to the IBM 3197 Display Station offerings, and provides a follow-on product to the IBM 3180 Display Station Model 220. Marketing representatives should recommend the 3197 Model D40/DG0 when a data-entry application is required in a System/36 or System/38 environment.

#### Marketing Action Required

Ensure that all System/36 and System/38 customers are aware of this announcement.

Review this announcement with all customers who have an IBM Workstation VPA Exhibit (32WS-X) with a Category A quantity commitment or an IBM Workstation and Related I/O VPA Exhibit (WKSX-X) in effect. Also, review this announcement with all customers who have the System/36 and/or System/38 installed or on order.

All outstanding proposals that include a 3180 Model 220 should be reviewed and updated.

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value:** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS XXXX" (XXXX = Machine Type) at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

**Marketing Assistance Program:** To support Marketing Assistance Program (MAP) participants and Complementary Marketing Organization Program (CMO) participants who want to purchase a 3197 demonstration unit, an offering at the following discounts is available under the terms and conditions of the MAP/CMO Demonstration System Discount Program. Refer to the Branch Coordinator's Guide for the Marketing Assistance Program (ZZ60-2829) for additional information.

Machine	Model	Discount
3197	D40	34%
3197	DG0	34%

**Loaners/Demonstrations:** Contact the Area Office for 3197 loaner machines to which the 122-key data-entry keyboard may be attached. Areas will order and provide data-entry keyboards for loaners/demonstrations, as required.

**Promotional Material:** The following materials will be sent to each branch office:

Title	Order Number
IBM 3197 Monochrome Display Station Proposal Insert	G221-2548
IBM 3197 Monochrome Display Station Customer Brochure	G520-6382
System/36 and System/38 Display Station Folder	G520-6381

Additional copies are available from Mechanicsburg.

#### HONE Information

Proposal material will be available through HONE.

Configuration aids, CFS36 and CFS38, are available through HONE. Fast path names are CFS36 and CFS38.

## Installation Information

### Installation Support

Installation and technical support will be provided by National Technical Support -- Dallas National Marketing and Technical Support Center, Irving, Texas.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and Area specialists for technical marketing assistance. System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSystem and HONE EQUAL. System engineers should research their questions in INFOSystem using the search word '3197D' with the branch specialist and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

### Administrative Information

#### Ordering Information

Orders may be entered into AAS beginning on December 1, 1987. Shipment dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders that include multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. Customers are not to be given a firm delivery date until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

#### AAS Order Control Code:

1-Year	3-Year
Warranty	Warranty
Model	Model

3197 Display Station  
122-Key Data Entry  
Keyboard  
Green Phosphor

D40

DG0

Note: For 3197 Models D40/DG0 installed in Chicago, specify #9986 for a 6-foot power cord (P/N 6952298), available as no-charge-only at initial order.

Individual elements may be ordered by specifying the part number using the AAS mnemonic, MSORDER (Category = Accessory, supplies; group = DP supplies).

Element	Part Numbers
Video with cable	6457150
Logic	81X5375
Data-Entry Keyboard (122-Key)	1393640
Pedestal	94X1857
Line Cord-2.8M (9.0 foot)	6952297
Line Cord-1.8M (6.0 foot)	6952298
Auto Termination Unit*	70X2370

#### Accessories

Security Key Blanks** (A00-A99)	6238059
Security Key Blanks** (D00-D99)	64X9944
Printer Cable	6457008

\* Available separately as a maintenance part only.

\*\* Duplicate keys may be made from these blanks.

Customers may order accessories by calling IBM Direct Response Operations at 800-426-2468.

## Request for Price Quotation

Requests for RPQs will not be accepted.

### Sponsoring Executive

W. P. Lyons  
Director, Workstations Product Management

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40

The IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40/DG0 is for use with the IBM System/36, System/38, and the IBM 5294 Remote Control Unit. It is the newest model of the 15-inch, green phosphor monochrome CRT display station, and provides the new 122-key, Data Entry Keyboard.

**Purchase Prices:** 3197-D40 \$1,795  
3197-GD0 1,895

**Planned Availability Date:** February 1988

	1-Year Warranty Model	3-Year Warranty Model
<b>3197 Display Station Data Entry 122-Key Keyboard Green Phosphor</b>	<b>D40</b>	<b>DG0</b>

### Highlights

- A follow-on product to the IBM 3180 Display Station Model 220
- Provides a 122-key data-entry keyboard for data-entry support, in addition to existing 3197 Model D functions
- Compatible with existing 3180 Model 220 and 3197 Model D application programs
- Provides dual-address terminal capability.

### Description

The IBM 3197 Model D40/DG0 Display Station is the latest member of the IBM 5250 Information Display System. It is a high-quality, monochrome CRT that provides existing IBM 3197 Display Station Model D functions, and adds a 122-key data-entry keyboard.

The following host-directed printers are supported:

- IBM 4201 Proprinter (multispeed matrix)
- IBM 4201 Proprinter XL (multispeed, wide platen)
- IBM 5201 Quietwriter® Printer Models 1 and 2 (non-impact, letter-quality via 5256 emulation)
- IBM 5202 Quietwriter® III Printer (non-impact, letter-quality)

® Registered trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

Dual-address terminal capability allows one or two concurrent display sessions; or one display session and one printer session to a System/36 or System/38.

3197 Model D40/DG0 characteristics include:

- Three-screen capability
- 1920-character screen (80 columns by 24 rows) and an operator information area
- 3564-character screen (132 columns by 27 rows) and an operator information area
- In dual-address mode, 1920 and 1360-character, split screen, and an operator information area
- 15-inch, green phosphor monochrome CRT with steady image
- Coiled keyboard cable
- Tilt/swivel pedestal
- Set-up function
- Security keylock.

### Publications

The following publications are shipped with the product:

- IBM 3197 Model D Display Station User's Guide (GA18-2545)
- IBM 3197 Model D Display Station Setup Instructions (A18-2546)
- IBM 3197 Model D Display Station Problem Solving Guide (GA18-2547)
- Connecting the IBM 3197 to System/36 and System/38 (GA18-2629)

The following publications are available:

- IBM 3197 Display Station Description (GA18-2544)
- IBM 3197 Display Station Repair Center Maintenance Information Manual (SY18-2176)

Note: The IBM 3197 Display Station Description Manual (GA18-2544) should be ordered for site planning and preparation work prior to 3197 delivery. It provides information for designing and integrating the display station into the system, configuring the host system program to which the display station is attached, and for preparing the site for installation.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

Additional copies are available. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

### Schedule

Planned general availability is February 1988.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 attaches to System/36 and System/38 processors; and attaches remotely to these systems via an IBM 5294. The same type of cable used to attach IBM 3196, 3179 Model 2, 3180 Model 220, and other 3197 Model D and IBM 5250 Information Display System devices may be used.

**Programming Requirements:** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 is supported by the current System/36 Release 5 and System/38 Release 8. It is also supported by IBM application programs such as MAPICS, DMAS, CMAS, Query/36, and Displaywrite/36.

**Compatibility:** Host Applications: The 3197 Model D40/DG0 will accept the 3180 Model 220 datastream, and will run existing alphanumeric applications unmodified (except for possible changes because screen format).

IBM Personal Computer printer output, using IBM PC Support/36 Release 5 or PC Support/38 Release 8 Virtual Printer (Data-Type 4) may be directed to the 3197 Model D40-attached printer via the System/36 or System/38, with full-page, printer fidelity.

**Note:** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 must be properly configured on the System/36 or System/38.

#### Configurable I/O Units

- IBM 3197 Model D40/DG0 -- Class C: 10 -- 40.6° C (50-105° F); 8-80% relative humidity
- IBM 4201, 4202, 5201, 5202 -- Class B: 15.6 -- 32.2° C (60-90° F); 20-80% relative humidity
- Power ratings and line cord
  - Power -- 120V AC, 1-phase, 3-wire, 60Hz; 2.8 meter (9.0 foot) line cord with non-locking plug is available as standard. A 1.8 meter (6-foot) line cord with non-locking plug is also available.

**Prerequisites:** IBM 3197 Logic Unit (P/N 81X5375) is required for data-entry support on System/36 Release 5, or higher, and System/38 Release 8, or higher.

The 3197 Model D40/DG0 attaches to the System/36, System/38, or the IBM 5294 Remote Control Unit via cabling system, twinaxial cable or equivalent, and telephone twisted-pair cable (using the IBM 5299 Model 3 Terminal Multiconnector/TPPA).

#### Printer Prerequisites

##### IBM 5201 Quietwriter Printer Models 1 and 2

An IBM "Quiet" Electronic Font Type A is required for attachment of the 5201 to the 3197 Model D40. These fonts are available in a variety of typesizes and pitches. Consult the Supplies Reference Guide for Information Processing Equipment (71K6162 or G570-2098).

The Quietwriter Printer 5201 emulates the 5256. With 5256 emulation, the 5201 supports letter-quality print,

one-font cartridge, and either the continuous forms feed device or the optional, single-drawer, sheet-feed device.

##### IBM 5202 Quietwriter III Printer

For full character-set support, an IBM Electronic III Cartridge in code page 850 is required for attachment of the 5202 to the 3197 Model D40. Switch number 1 of switch group 2 in the printer should be set to ON to select the pluggable font cartridge. Switch number 6 in switch group 2 should be set to ON to have the printer default to draft print mode when powered ON. Switch number 1 in switch group 1 should be set to ON to select character set 2.

Refer to IBM PC Printer and IBM Typewriter Supplies Catalogs, IBM Authorized Dealers, or IBM Direct for the appropriate part numbers, ordering procedures, and prices.

When ordering any of the above printers for use with the 3197 Model D40/DG0, order printer cable (P/N 6457008) (available through the IBM Direct Response Office).

#### Limitations:

- The 3197 Model D40/DG0 attached to a Quietwriter Printer Models 1 and 2 does not support IBM 4214 printer emulation.
- During IPL on System/36 Release 5, Auto-config must be used to configure the 3197 Model D40/DG0.
- RPQs and the 3180 Reverse Image Key are not available.

**Cable Orders:** IBM shielded, twisted-pair cable or twinaxial cable (or equivalent) is required for product attachment. Cable and associated accessories may be purchased from IBM, or a customer-selected source. The customer is responsible for installation and maintenance of the cable and associated accessories.

#### Twisted-Pair Cable

For proper identification, installation, and application of cable and associated accessories, refer to IBM Cabling System -- Planning and Installation Guide (GA27-3361). For pricing and ordering information, refer to the appropriate IBM Cabling System catalogue, or contact an Authorized IBM Cabling Systems distributor.

#### Twinaxial Cable

For proper identification, installation, and application of cable and associated accessories, refer to IBM 5250 Information Display System Planning and Site Preparation Guide. (GA21-9337).

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer should have, or should order the IBM 3197 Display Station Description (GA18-2544) for site planning and preparation work.

The customer is responsible for:

- Adequate site, system, and other vendor preparation
- Receiving, unpacking, and placing the unit
- Physical setup, connection of cables in customer access area, switch settings, and checkout
- During initial setup, installing Repair Identification (RID) Tags on each 3197 Model D element (logic, video, and keyboard).

The RID tag is used to identify each element (logic, video, and keyboard) of all element-exchange products. It is used by IBM for service entitlement. Because only the type and serial number of the product is stored in IBM's entitlement system, the RID tags are attached to the logic element when it is shipped from the plant. RID tags must be removed from this element and installed on each element during initial setup. Detailed RID tag installation information is contained in the Display Station Setup Instruction Manual which is shipped with each 3197 Model D40/DG0.

- Contacting IBM Service for 3197 Model D Communications Cable attachment to an on-site, serviced IBM control unit where customer access area is not provided.
- Determining the required number of spares

The number of spare units is dependent upon the number of the 3197 Model D40/DG0 units installed, application requirements, and physical location and layout.

The customer is advised to test spares for correct operation before putting them on the shelf. Spares may be ordered as a complete machine or as individual elements.

- Performing customer problem analysis and resolution
- Calling the Service/Exchange Communication Center, at 800-428-2569, for service.
- Modifying the keyboard. Customer-owned keycaps must be removed prior to returning a keyboard for exchange or repair service, and the standard layout keyboard returned to IBM. A standard layout keyboard will be returned to the customer.
- Returning security keys to IBM if any exchange service of Logic Element is required. If the keys are not returned to IBM, the customer will be charged for the replacement of the security keys and locks on a time-and-material basis.
- Ordering the IBM 3197 Display Station Description (GA18-2544) for site planning and preparation work.

**Installability:** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 is a Customer Set-Up (CSU) machine. Set-up instructions are included with each machine as IBM 3197 Model D40/DG0 Display Station Setup Instructions (GA18-2546).

**Problem Determination:** The Operator Reference and Problem Solving Guide contains self-test and diagnostic procedures which assist in isolating a defective machine element. The failing element may be replaced by calling the Service/Exchange Communication Center.

**Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement:**

**Warning:** This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause interference to radio communications. It has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A computing device pursuant to Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference when operated in a commercial environment. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause interference, in which case the user, at his own expense, will be required to take

whatever measures may be required to correct the interference.

**Packaging:** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 Display Station is shipped in a single shipping carton with the individual elements packaged in separate cartons. The Set-up Instructions (GA18-2546, GA18-2631), User's Guide (GA18-2545), Problem Solving Guide (GA18-2547), and Connecting the IBM 3197 to System/36 and System/38 (GA18-2629) are included in this packaging.

**Keys:** The display is shipped with two keys. If keys are lost, the tumbler assembly must be replaced. This service is available on an hourly-service basis. For additional/replacement keys, see Accessories.

**Security, Auditability, and Control**

Data security functions provided by the IBM 3197 Model C are non-displayed field control (specified in the attribute byte) and the security keylock. User management is responsible for implementation of these functions.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

**Terms and Conditions**

**Volume Purchase Discount:** Volume purchasing is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) to Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines.

The IBM 3197 is in Category A Discount Group 2 of the Workstations and Related I/O Exhibit (WKSX), and in Category A Discount Group 3 of the IBM Workstations VPA Exhibit (32WS).

For further information regarding volume orders, contact your IBM marketing representative.

**IBM Credit Corporation Financing:** The 3197 Model D is eligible for a range of IBM Credit Corporation term leases and installment payment plans for commercial and state and local government customers.

**Corporate Service Amendment:** The 3197 Model D is covered by the Corporate Service Amendment Network Option.

**Eligible Machine under Alternative Certification for IBM Machines:** No.

**Warranty:** 3 years or 1 year.

**Types of Service:**

- Warranty
  - IBM On-site Exchange (IOE)
- IBM Maintenance Agreement
  - IBM On-site Exchange (IOE)

**Machine Group:** A

**IBM Hourly Service Rate Classification:** 1

Service may be obtained by calling the IBM Service/Exchange Communications Center, toll-free, at 1-800-428-2569.

**Product Availability Status:** New product available.

**Customer Set-Up:** Yes - CSU Allowance is one day. IBM set-up is available at the applicable IBM hourly service rates and minimum charges.

**Pre-Installation Test Allowance:** None.

**On-Site Test Allowance:** None.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Annual Minimum Maintenance Charges:** IOE (#9830) \$60

**Corporate Service Amendment (Exhibit CSA001):**

Network Machine Type	One Year	Discount Three Years	Five Years
3197	15%	25%	30%

**Mid-Range System Amendment (MRSA):** The 3197 Model D40/DG0 is currently eligible for MRSA. The discount is, as follows:

Agreement Option	Discount
3 Years	17%
5 Years	22%

#### Charges

	Model	Purchase Price	Annual Minimum Maintenance Charge IOE
3197 Display Station	D40 (a)	\$1,795	\$60
	DG0 (b)	1,895	60

Description	Part Number	Purchase and Element Exchange Price
Video with cable	6457150	\$610
Logic	81X5375	830
Data-entry keyboard (122-Key)	1393640	295
Pedestal	94X1857	20
Line cord-2.8M (9.0 foot)	6952297	10
Line cord-1.8M (6.0 foot)	6952298	10
Auto Termination Unit*	70X2370	30

\* Available separately as a maintenance part only.

#### Accessories

Description	Part Number	Purchase Price
For keys labeled A00-A99	6238059	\$5
For keys labeled D00-D99	64X9944	5
Printer cable	6457008	30

\* Duplicate Keys may be made locally from these key blanks.

Customers may order accessories through IBM Direct Response Operations, by calling 800-426-2468.

Remarketers should mail their accessory orders to the following address:

IBM Corporation  
P.O. Box 10  
Princeton, New Jersey  
ATTN: IBM DIRECT,  
Building 2, 2nd Floor



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement

The IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement improves the internal processing speed of complex text, image, and graphics applications within the printer, up to the printer maximum of 20 pages per minute. The Performance Enhancement will be standard on all new 3820s shipped December 15, 1987, or later. The Performance Enhancement (#3080) is available as a field installable feature for all 3820s shipped prior to December 15, 1987.

Purchase Price: #3080 -- \$2,835

Planned Availability: 3820s shipped December 15, 1987, or later include the enhancement. Availability of the field upgrade is planned for second quarter 1988.

3820  
#3080

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### Product Positioning

The 3820 Page Printer with the Performance Enhancement can print applications with large volumes of text, image, or graphics at a faster rate than before. It can provide increased printer performance up to a maximum of 20 pages per minute when attached to a 19.2 Kbps communication line or a channel. Due to transmission line limitations, little or no improvement can be expected on lower-speed attachments.

In addition, this Performance Enhancement can be combined with the previously announced Remote PrintManager to provide increased printer throughput on some applications.

Performance improvements, up to a maximum of 20 pages per minute, are shown in the following table:

--- 3820 Attachment ---		
	19.2Kbps	Channel
Text	Up to 45%	Up to 45%
Complex Image	Up to 20%	Up to 20%

Additional performance detail related to this Performance Enhancement is available from the ISG Washington System Center.

### Marketing Strategy

Marketing representatives should carefully evaluate each customer application prior to quoting an estimated improvement in the 3820's throughput performance. Due to the variability of data requirements for each print application, customers may not realize significant performance improvements across all print applications.

### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should update all outstanding and planned proposals for inclusion of the Performance Enhancement. Marketing representatives should review this announcement with customers that have currently installed 3820s for additional 3820 potential and installation of the MES on existing printers.

### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 3820" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

Marketing support, including demonstration information, is available from the Boulder National Marketing Center by sending a PROFS note to USERID HELP38XX at Node BLDVM2. Voice contact can be made at (303) 924-6446 or 263-6446 (IBM dial network).

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by National Technical Support -- Large Systems in Gaithersburg, Md, or National Technical Support -- Dallas Marketing and Technical Support Center in Irving, Texas.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialist for technical marketing assistance. Systems engineers are provided installation support through HONE INFOSYSTEM and HONE EQUAL. Systems engineers should research their questions in INFOSYSTEM using the key word 3820, with the branch specialist, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.



## **Administrative Information**

### ***Ordering Information***

Orders may be entered into AAS immediately. Shipping dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders involving multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. No delivery commitments are to be made to customers until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

Effective December 15, 1987, all IBM 3820s will be shipped with the Performance Enhancement.

Customers who have existing 3820 orders on the backlog at the time of announcement, will receive the Performance Enhancement with the 3820, per the Price Protection Period stated in the Sales Contract.

MES orders for field installation will be accepted immediately. Shipping schedules will be acknowledged within 30 days of receipt of the MES in the plant. General availability will be second quarter 1988.

### ***AAS Order Control Code***

Name	Type	Feature
Performance Enhancement MES	3820	3080

### ***Request for Price Quotation***

Requests for RPQs will be accepted immediately and processing will begin in 90 days. Response time and delivery are dependent upon complexity.

### ***Sponsoring Executive***

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement

The IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement improves the internal processing speed of complex text, image, and graphics applications within the printer, up to the printer maximum of 20 pages per minute. The Performance Enhancement will be standard on all new 3820s shipped December 15, 1987, or later. The Performance Enhancement (#3080) is available as a field installable feature for all 3820s shipped prior to December 15, 1987.

**Purchase Price: #3080 -- \$2,835**

**Planned Availability:** 3820s shipped December 15, 1987, or later include the enhancement. Availability of the field upgrade is planned for second quarter 1988.

3820  
#3080

### Highlights

- Higher-speed microprocessor
- New memory technologies

### Description

The IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement provides a potential improvement in throughput of up to 45%\* in applications that are not constrained by the speed of the attachment. In most cases, pages with large quantities of text and/or graphics will be processed faster, thus the throughput may be increased up to the printer maximum speed of 20 pages per minute.

The Performance Enhancement contains a new higher-speed microprocessor and new memory technologies that result in a performance improvement for many applications. Factors such as communication line speed, system load, number of characters per page, complexity of page (text and image), font changes, have an impact on performance.

\* Contact your marketing representative for details on performance data as measured in a test environment.

### Publications

The following publications are available:

- IBM 3820 Page Printer Introduction and Planning Guide (G544-3520)
- IBM 3820 Page Printer Reference Manual (S544-3175)
- Advanced Function Printing Software: General Information (G544-3415)
- IBM Local Area Network PrintManager (G544-3184).

The 3820 Page Printer Operator's Guide (S544-3080) and 3820 Page Printer Operator Summary (S544-3081) are shipped with the printer. Additional copies are available.

To order publications, see your IBM marketing representative.

### Education Support

No Performance Enhancement training is required. The appropriate curriculum will be updated, as necessary, to include the enhancements in this announcement. To enroll, or for further information, contact IBM Direct Education by dialing 1-800-465-1234.

### Schedule

Planned availability of the Performance Enhancement for new 3820s is December 15, 1987. Availability of the MES (#3080) is planned for second quarter 1988.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Limitations:** The Performance Enhancement MES is available only for 3820s shipped prior to December 15, 1987.

#### Planning Information

**Installability:** Installation time for the MES is 0.9 Hour.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

**Packaging:** The Performance Enhancement MES contains:

- Control Unit Processor Logic Card.
- Control Unit Control Storage Memory Card.
- Card Connectors.

**Security, Auditability, and Control**

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

**Terms and Conditions**

All terms and conditions are the same as those applicable to the 3820

**Charges**

	Feature Number	Purchase Price	Monthly Rental Charge	MMMC
Performance Enhancement	3080*	\$2,835	NC	NC

\* Only for field installation on 3820s shipped prior to December 15, 1987.



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 5340 System/34 MESs Withdrawal from Marketing

**Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the IBM 5340 System/34 MESs, including all accessories.**

### Marketing Information

Orders received and time-stamped in the branch office before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, orders will either be accepted and assigned estimated shipment dates, or cancelled if units cannot be allocated. (Orders that cannot be accepted will be cancelled from the AAS backlog.) Orders received on or after March 15, 1988, will not be accepted.

Presently scheduled orders will be honored; however, a customer-initiated deferment of an order may result in cancellation by IBM. Unscheduled orders in the backlog will be scheduled on an as-available basis.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available.

### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should update outstanding proposals.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

By April 15, 1988, inform all customers of the IBM estimated shipment date or notify them that their order cannot be accepted. Cancel all unaccepted orders from the backlog.

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 calendar days of this announcement.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the notice are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 187-235-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers (IBM System/34 5340 MESs Withdrawal from Marketing)

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

M. H. Forster  
Group Director  
Mid-Range Systems Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## **Notice to IBM Customers**

December 15, 1987

### **IBM 5340 System/34 MESs Withdrawal from Marketing**

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the IBM 5340 System/34 MESs, including all accessories.

IBM's supply of the 5340 System/34 MESs and accessories is limited. Orders for this product received by IBM before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, either your order will be assigned an IBM estimated shipment date, or you will be notified that IBM cannot accept your order.

Orders for which IBM has already assigned an estimated shipment date will be honored. If you defer the estimated shipment date of an on-order product, the order may be cancelled by IBM.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available.

If you have a requirement for this product, please notify your IBM marketing representative as soon as possible.



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 3505 Card Reader and IBM 3525 Card Punch Withdrawal from Marketing

**Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the 3505 Card Reader, 3525 Card Punch, and all related features and accessories.**

### Marketing Information

Orders received and time-stamped in the branch office before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, orders will either be accepted and assigned estimated shipment dates, or cancelled if units cannot be allocated. (Orders that cannot be accepted will be cancelled from the AAS backlog.) Orders received on or after March 15, 1988, will not be accepted.

Presently scheduled orders will be honored; however, a customer-initiated deferment of an order may result in cancellation by IBM. Unscheduled orders in the backlog will be scheduled on an as-available basis.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available.

### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should update outstanding proposals.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

By April 15, 1988, inform all customers of the IBM estimated shipment date, or notify them that their order cannot be accepted. Cancel all unaccepted orders from the backlog.

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 calendar days of announcement.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the notice are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 187-236-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers (3505 Card Reader and 3525 Card Punch Withdrawal from Marketing)

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

M. H. Forster  
Group Director  
Mid-Range Systems Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## **Notice to IBM Customers**

December 15, 1987

### **IBM 3505 Card Reader and IBM 3525 Card Punch Withdrawal from Marketing**

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the 3505 Card Reader, 3525 Card Punch, and all related features and accessories.

IBM's supply of the products being withdrawn is limited. Orders for these products received by IBM before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, either your order will be assigned an IBM estimated shipment date, or you will be notified that IBM cannot accept your order.

Orders for which IBM has already assigned an estimated shipment date will be honored. If you defer the estimated shipment date of an on-order product, the order may be cancelled by IBM.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available.

If you have a requirement for these products, please notify your IBM marketing representative as soon as possible.



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

# Product Announcement

December 15, 1987

## Enhancements for the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit

Enhancements to the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit include the support of the limited back-up capability provided via the IBM 4683 Model A02, diskette-based driver code to support all 4683 features with the exception of Feature Expansion B, C, and D cards. These enhancements are available at no additional charge to customers who have already purchased this kit.

**Purchase Price: \$795 (No change from previous Purchase Price)**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

Description	Feature	Part Number
IBM 4683 Attachment Adapter Kit	8314	96X4842

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### Product Positioning

Enhancements for the 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit provide hardware with in-store processing capability at a lower price, and are directed toward customers who require one or two point-of-sale registers.

#### Marketing Strategy

The enhancement provides a means for offering small businesses additional solutions to their requirements for a one or two register store point-of-sale system at a lower price.

#### Marketing Action Required

Sales calls should be made on all store systems customers where the 4680 Store System is not viable and this announcement meets the requirements of the customer.

Outstanding proposals and current contracts for special bids should be referred to the (ISG) Distribution and Store System Staff Services.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINT or "POINTS XXXX" (XXXX = machine type) at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Education Support

No education is planned for this feature.

#### HONE Information

The configuration aid, CFPOS, has been updated and is available on HONE.

#### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

**Maintenance Processing:** This will be the responsibility of NSD and the maintenance data base will be IML.

#### Ordering Information

Orders may be entered into AAS immediately. Shipping dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders involving multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. No delivery commitments are to be made to customers until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

The 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit (#8314) can be ordered as a feature on the following system units for new equipment orders: IBM Personal Computer, IBM Personal Computer XT™, IBM Personal Computer AT®, and IBM Personal System/2™ Model 30. When ordering for installed system units, process as a feature of special ordering vehicle 5XXX-ZZZ for the IBM Personal Computer, Personal Computer XT or AT, and 8530-ZZZ for Personal System/2.

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

The enhanced support is available to customers who have already purchased this kit, at no additional charge. The enhanced support diskettes will be shipped automatically from: Alternate Channels Branch Office Distribution and Store Systems Industry, Raleigh, North Carolina by December 31, 1987. Questions may be directed to the Alternate Channels Branch Office at (919) 872-7373.

The announced product(s) will be stocked and shipped by the ISG Distribution Network. Scheduling inquiries should be directed to ISG Product Scheduling, Bethesda, MD.



Distribution/shipment inquiries should be directed to the  
ISG Field Support Center, Mechanicsburg, PA.

**AAS Order Control Code**

Description	Feature	Part Number
IBM 4683 Attachment Adapter Kit	8314	96X4842

***Request for Price Quotation***

Requests for RPQs will not be accepted.

**Sponsoring Executive**

R. W. Clark  
General Manager  
Services Sector

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Enhancements for the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit

Enhancements to the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit include the support of the limited back-up capability provided via the IBM 4683 Model A02, diskette-based driver code to support all 4683 features with the exception of Feature Expansion B, C, and D cards. These enhancements are available at no additional charge to customers who have already purchased this kit.

**Purchase Price: \$795 (No change from previous Purchase Price)**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

Description	Feature	Part Number
IBM 4683 Attachment Adapter Kit	8314	96X4842

### Highlights

- IBM 4683 Model A02 with limited back-up capability when attached to an IBM PC or IBM Personal System/2™
- Diskette-based driver programs to support the 4683 Model 2 or A02, Alphanumeric Keyboard, Operator Display, IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner Adapter Model 2, Hand-Held Bar Code Reader, Feature Expansion A (scheduled for shipment January 29, 1988) for attachment of 127mm (5 inch), 228mm (9 inch), IBM 8503 (12 inch) Monochrome and IBM 8513 Color Displays, and Serial Input/Output (I/O) port and Matrix Keyboard
- DOS device drivers that are modular to conserve memory, and allow individual point-of-sale terminal I/O configurations.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

### Description

Additional diskette-based driver programs are added to the 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit which provides the necessary adapter card, driver code, diagnostics, installation aid, and instructions for attaching one or two IBM 4683 Model 2s or Model A02s to a Personal Computer or Personal System/2.

### Publications

The appropriate 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit publications will be updated to reflect this announcement.

The following publications may be ordered by contacting your IBM marketing representative:

Title	Order Number
IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit: Programmer's Guide	SC30-3459
Hardware Maintenance and Service Personal Computer: IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter	SY27-0307

The appropriate publications will be updated to reflect this announcement.

### Education Support

Education is not provided for the enhancement features. See your IBM marketing representative for applicable IBM 4680 Store System education.

### Schedule

Planned Availability is December 31, 1987.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit contains an IBM Personal Computer option card and 3.5- and 5.25-inch diskettes for driver and diagnostic programs. It is for use in an IBM Personal Computer, IBM Personal Computer XT™, IBM Personal Computer AT®, or IBM Personal System/2 Model 30.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

The 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter is designed to operate in store environments where heating and/or cooling facilities are provided as required for normal store operations. It requires a full-sized expansion slot in one of the following:

- IBM Personal Computer

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

- IBM Personal Computer XT
- IBM Personal Computer AT
- IBM Personal System/2 Model 30.

**Programming Requirements:** Each IBM Personal Computer requires the IBM Disk Operating System (DOS) Version 3.30.

Memory requirements excluding the IBM Disk Operating System (DOS) Version 3.30 are dependent on the application program and software drivers utilized.

Each system unit must have at least two diskette drives, or one diskette drive and one fixed disk.

**Limitations:** The 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit is not supported for use in the: IBM 5161 Personal Computer Expansion Unit, IBM Personal Computer XT Model 286, and IBM Personal Computer AT Models 068, 099, 839, 849, and 899.

#### **Planning Information**

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for unpacking and setup of the components in accordance with the setup instructions provided by IBM.

The customer is also responsible for Customer Problem Analysis and Resolution (CPAR) during the warranty period unless the warranty option is in force. CPAR procedures are provided by IBM.

**Problem Determination:** During the warranty period (CCR), the customer should identify the failing element using the IBM-provided procedures. After the warranty period, the customer's responsibility is limited to identifying the failing machine with the IBM-provided procedures.

**Packaging:** The 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit contains the following items:

- One IBM 4683 Model 2 Adapter card and wrap plug
- One ship group containing:
  - One lock accessory kit
  - Both a 3.5- and a 5.25-inch diskette kit
- IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model 2 Attachment Adapter System: Problem Determination Guide
- IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model 2 Attachment Adapter System: Installation Guide
- IBM 4680 Store System: Terminal Operations Guide
- IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model A02 Backup Function Reference Summary card
- Guide to Operations Personal Computer: IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter (with 3.5- and 5.25-inch diskettes).

#### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

The IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit utilizes the security and auditability features of the IBM Personal Computer, Personal Computer XT, Personal Computer AT, and Personal System/2 Model 30.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

#### **Terms and Conditions**

**Customer Setup:** Yes.

All terms and conditions are the same as those applicable to the IBM Personal Computer and/or Personal System/2.

**Licensing:** The program is licensed under the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement (Z125-3301). A copy is packaged and shipped with each product and is visible to the customer before the package is opened. The customer is advised that opening the package indicates acceptance of these terms and conditions. No signature is required.

**Limited Warranty:** No. Media: 90 days.

#### **Charges**

Description	Special Feature	Part Number	Purchase Price
IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit	8314	96X4842	\$795



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4683 Selected Special Features Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the following 4683 Point of Sale Terminal special features:

#3354 300mm (12 inch) Monochrome Display  
#3355 Distributed 300mm (12 inch) Display Cable  
#3356 Pedestal  
#3352 346mm (14 inch) Color Display  
#3353 346mm (14 inch) Display Cable  
#3359 346mm (14 inch) Color Display Pedestal

### Marketing Information

Orders received for the above features and time stamped in the branch office before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, orders will either be accepted and assigned estimated shipment dates or cancelled if units cannot be allocated. (Orders that cannot be accepted will be cancelled from the the AAS backlog.) Orders received on or after March 15, 1988, will not be accepted.

Presently scheduled orders will be honored. However, a customer-initiated deferment of an order may result in cancellation by IBM. Unscheduled orders in the backlog will be scheduled on an as-available basis.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available for these features.

### Administrative Information

#### *Administrative Action Required*

By April 15, 1988, all customers for the withdrawn features must be notified of the IBM estimated shipment date of notified that their orders cannot be accepted.

IBM will cancel all unaccepted orders from the backlog.

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within ten days of announcement.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement is being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to

identify activity that has occurred beyond the file status date of the control listing.

### *Attachment Information*

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 187-238-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers, IBM 4683 Selected Features Withdrawal from Marketing

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available for these features.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## **Notice to IBM Customers**

December 15, 1987

### **IBM 4683 Selected Features Withdrawal from Marketing**

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the following IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal special features:

- 300mm (12 inch) Monochrome Display (#3354)
- Distributed 300mm (12 inch) Display Cable (#3355)
- Pedestal (#3356)
- 346mm (14 inch) Color Display (#3352)
- 346mm (14 inch) Display Cable (#3353)
- 346mm (14 inch) Color Display Pedestal (#3359)

IBM's supply of the features being withdraw is limited. Orders for these features received by IBM before March 15, 1988, will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, either your order will be assigned an IBM estimated shipment date or you will be notified that IBM cannot accept your order.

Orders for which IBM has already assigned an estimated shipment date will be honored. If you defer the estimated shipment date of an on-order product, the order may be cancelled by IBM.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available for these features.



# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Withdrawal of Selected Store Systems Products from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM is withdrawing from marketing the machines and features listed in the attached Notice to IBM Customers.

### Marketing Information

Orders received and time stamped in the branch office before March 15, 1988 will be acknowledged on an as available basis. By April 15, 1988, orders will either be accepted and assigned estimated shipment dates or cancelled if units cannot be allocated. (Orders that cannot be accepted will be cancelled from the AAS backlog.) Orders received on or after March 15, 1988 will not be accepted.

Presently scheduled orders will be honored, however, a customer-initiated deferment of an order may result in cancellation by IBM. Unscheduled orders in the backlog will be scheduled on an as-available basis.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available for these machines.

**VPA and Special Bid Customers:** Existing VPAs and special bids for these withdrawn products will be honored at their total quantity of machines by category, provided all orders for these withdrawn machines are received by IBM before March 15, 1988 and in time to be scheduled and shipped within the contract period. Requested delivery dates may be anytime within the VPA/Special Bid Contract Period.

Effective March 15, 1988, new VPA contracts will not be accepted for these withdrawn machines.

### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should update outstanding proposals.

**Field Support:** Installation and technical support provided through HONE EQUAL for this until March 15, 1994. The INFOSYSTEM library of answered questions and other technical information for this product remains available.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

By April 15, 1988, inform all customers of the IBM estimated shipment date or notify them that their order cannot be accepted. Cancel all unaccepted orders from the backlog.

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 days of this announcement.

All customers with a volume procurement in effect (Volume Procurement amendment (VPA) or special bid) for the machine(s) being withdrawn from marketing must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 days of announcement. Copies are available through DAWN.

A Customer Notification Control List of the customers affected by this announcement and an appropriate number of notices are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

### Request for Price Quotation

Effective today, requests for new functions will not be accepted for the following machine 3651, 3657, 3659, 3669, 3683, 3684 or 3689.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 187-239-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers  
Withdrawal of Selected Store Systems Products

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector



## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Withdrawal of Selected Store Systems Products

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM will withdraw from marketing the products listed below.

IBM's supply of the products being withdrawn is limited. Orders for these products received by IBM before March 15, 1988 will be acknowledged on an as-available basis. By April 15, 1988, either your order will be assigned an IBM estimated shipment date or you will be notified that IBM cannot accept your order.

Orders for which IBM has already assigned an estimated shipment date will be honored. If you defer the estimated shipment date of an on-order product, the order may be cancelled by IBM.

Existing VPAs and special bids for these withdrawn products will be honored at their current Total Quantity of Machines by Category provided all orders for these withdrawn machines are received by IBM before March 15, 1988 and in time to be scheduled and shipped within the contract period.

IBM maintenance and other related services are not affected by this announcement and will continue to be available for these machines.

If you have a requirement for these products, please notify your IBM marketing representative as soon as possible.

### Products/Features to be Withdrawn from Marketing:

	Models	Model Changes	Features	RPQs	Accs	Notes
3651 Storage Controller	A60,B60	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	5
	B25,A75	--	--	--	--	1,2
	B75,C75	--	--	--	--	1,2
	D75	--	--	--	--	1,2
	C25	--	--	--	--	1,2
	A50,B50	--	--	--	--	3
3653 POS Terminal	001,P01	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
3657 Ticket Unit	001	--	--	--	--	3
3659 Remote Cmnctns Unit	001	--	--	--	--	1,2
3661 Store Controller	001,002	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
3663 Supermarket Terminal	001,002	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
	P01,P03	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
	003	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
3666 Checkout Scanner	001	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3

	Models	Model Changes	Features	RPQs	Accs	Notes
3667 Checkout Scanner	001	ALL	ALL	ALL	ALL	3
3669 Store Cmnctns Unit	001	--	--	--	--	1,2
	002	--	--	--	--	1,2
	003	--	--	--	--	1,2
3683 POS Terminal	A01,A02	--	--	--	--	1,2
	A03,001	--	--	--	--	1,2
	002,003	--	--	--	--	1,2
3684 POS Control Unit	001,002	--	--	--	--	1,2
3689 Store Cmnctns Unit	001	--	--	--	--	1,2

**Notes:**

- 1) Features, model changes, accessories and released RPQs can be ordered on as-available basis.
- 2) New RPQ requests will not be accepted.
- 3) Machine/Models were previously withdrawn from marketing.
- 4) Models, model changes, features, RPQs and accessories are withdrawn from marketing.

The following features are being withdrawn at this time:

Machine	Model(s)	Feature*	Notes
3683	ALL	1577	4
3683	001,002	4945	4
3683	003	4945	4
3683	001,002	4946	4
3683	003	4946	4
3683	001	7710	4
3683	001,A01	8726	4
3683	003,A03	8726	4
3684 CNTLR	ALL	1577	4
3684	ALL	4945	4
3684	ALL	4946	4
3684	002	7710	4
3684	ALL	8726	4

\* Only the listed features are being withdrawn





# Product Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Models, Displays, and Enhancements

The 4683 Model A01 provides 2,048K bytes of storage for use by applications requiring more than the 1,024K bytes available on the 4683 Model 001. The 4683 Model A02 is a special version of the Model 002 containing a limited back-up capability for use with IBM Personal Computers or Personal System/2s™ via a 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit (#8314).

New enhancements for all 4683 models include a Hand-held Bar Code Reader (#4500), a 228mm (9-inch) Monochrome Display (#7428), and a Matrix Keyboard (#3323), as well as the ability to attach an IBM 8503 Monochrome Display or 8513 Color Display.

In addition, the Store Loop Cable for the 4683 Models 001 and A01 is now a separately priced feature and new, simplified ordering procedures for 4683 Model 002 and A02 cables and legend sheets for the 50-key keyboard are being implemented.

### Purchase Prices:

4683 Model 001	\$2,905
4683 Model A01	3,455
4683 Model A02	1,440
Store Loop Cable (#4040)	41
Hand-Held Bar Code Reader (#4500)	950
Matrix Keyboard (#3323)	560
228mm (9 inch) Monochrome Display (#7428)	300
228mm Display Pedestal-Integrated (#7426)	70
228mm Display Pedestal-Distributed (#7429)	24
Integrated Display Cable (#8277)	60
Distributed Display Cable(#8278)	78

### Planned Availability Date:

December 31st, 1987 - 4683 Models A01/A02; #4500; #3323

January 29th, 1988 - #4000 (P/N 83X7601)

March 25th, 1988 - #7428

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

## Marketing Information

### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD
  - IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADs)
  - IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADs)-Advanced Products
  - IBM Authorized Personal Computer Dealers (PCDs) for 4683 Model 2 and A02 and their Special Features
  - IBM Authorized Personal Computer Dealers (PCDs) Advanced Products for 4683 Model 2 and A02 and their Special Features

### Product Positioning

This is an enhancement applicable for department stores, mass merchandisers, large speciality store chains, drug stores, supermarkets, restaurants, and fast food establishments.

### Marketing Strategy

These enhancements provide significant opportunities to expand the marketing of the 4680 Store System to customers with needs not previously addressed by the product. Special attention should be paid to reviewing all customer requirements against the 4683 Model A01, in particular. With appropriate application programming, this terminal can be used to solve many customer requirements from in-terminal price lookup, reducing the cost of providing price file back-up, to storing of screen formats to facilitate the use of the newly announced displays.

### Marketing Action Required

All existing orders for 4683 should be reviewed to determine if legend sheet and cable ordering (including Store Loop Cable) procedures affect the order, or there is a customer requirement for :

- A Hand-Held Bar Code Reader.
- A 50-key Modifiable Keyboard that does not require legend sheets shipped with the keyboard.
- A 4683 Model 002 that does not require one of the prerequisite attachment cables.
- A 4683 Model 001 that should be changed to a 4683 Model A01 for terminal in-memory files.

- A 4683 Model A02 for limited back-up when the 4683 Model 002 is direct connected to a PC or PS/2.
- A display proposed as part of the point of sale configuration.
- A Matrix Keyboard where a requirement for a number of predefined keys exists.

Outstanding proposals and current contracts for special bids should be referred to the (ISG) Distribution and Store Systems Staff Services. Sales calls should be made on all Store Systems customers to review the applicability of this announcement regardless of the status of outstanding proposals or orders.

#### **Marketing Focus**

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value:** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS xxxx" (xxxx = machine type) at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### **Marketing Support**

Marketing support for the 4683 is provided by the Distribution and Store Systems Industry, Raleigh, North Carolina.

Assistance is available from the Store Systems branch offices.

#### **HONE Information**

Configuration AID (CFPOS) has been updated and is available on HONE.

#### **Installation Information**

#### **Installation Support**

Branch office system engineers should contact the Store Systems branch office for technical assistance. System engineers can access EQUAL to review answers to 4680-related questions or to enter appropriate EQUAL questions. Articles concerning installation and other technical topics not documented in formal SRL publications will also be made available through HONE applications INFOSYSTEM or INFOMENU.

Branch offices have a PC-based performance analysis aid (AN4680) to assist with assessing 4680 Store System performance. The AN4680 aid is available from the PCTOOLS Repository Catalog.

#### **Administrative Information**

#### **Maintenance Processing**

This will be the responsibility of NSD and the maintenance data base will be IMI.

#### **Ordering Information**

Orders may be entered into AAS immediately. Shipping dates will be assigned sequentially. Orders involving multiple units are subject to an extension of schedule. No delivery commitments are to be made to customers until confirmed schedules are in AAS.

The announced products will be stocked and shipped by the ISG Distribution Network. Scheduling inquiries should be directed to ISG Product Scheduling, Bethesda, MD. Distribution/shipment inquiries should be directed to the ISG Field Support Center, Mechanicsburg, PA.

Existing orders scheduled prior to December 31, 1987 will be shipped with keyboard legend sheets and attachment cables (as prior to this announcement).

To assure that order requirements are not overlooked as a result of this announcement, all existing 4683 orders scheduled December 31, 1987, and beyond will be automatically altered by ISG Bethesda to add feature code #9530 (keyboard legend sheets required). Existing orders for 4683 Model 001s will be automatically altered to add feature code #4040 (store loop cable required).

To ensure the applicability of order alterations, marketing should review a copy of the 4683 backlog in order to determine if keyboard legend sheets, store loop cables and attachment cables are, in fact, required. If not required, notify branch administration who will alter the orders to reflect feature code #9531 (no keyboard legend sheet required), feature code #9540 (store loop cable not required) and/or feature code #9520 (attachment cables not required).

#### **AAS Order Control Code:**

Description	Machines	Models	Features
4683 Point of Sale Terminal	4683	A01	
4683 Point of Sale Terminal	4683	A02	
Store Loop Cable			4040
228mm Monochrome Display (Low Voltage)			7428
228mm Monochrome Display Pedestal-Integrated			7426
228mm Monochrome Display Pedestal-Distributed			7429
Integrated Display Cable			8277
Distributed Display Cable			8278
Hand-Held Bar Code Reader			4500
Matrix Keyboard			3323

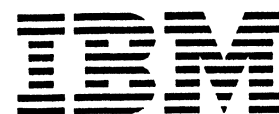
#### **Request for Price Quotation**

Requests for RPQs will not be accepted.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

# Product Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Models, Displays, and Enhancements

The 4683 Model A01 provides 2,048K bytes of storage for use by applications requiring more than the 1,024K bytes available on the 4683 Model 001. The 4683 Model A02 is a special version of the Model 002 containing a limited back-up capability for use with IBM Personal Computers or Personal System/2s™ via a 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit (#8314).

New enhancements for all 4683 models include a Hand-held Bar Code Reader (#4500), a 228mm (9-inch) Monochrome Display (#7428), and a Matrix Keyboard (#3323), as well as the ability to attach an IBM 8503 Monochrome Display or 8513 Color Display.

In addition, the Store Loop Cable for the 4683 Models 001 and A01 is now a separately priced feature and new, simplified ordering procedures for 4683 Model 002 and A02 cables and legend sheets for the 50-key keyboard are being implemented.

### Purchase Prices:

4683 Model 001	\$2,905
4683 Model A01	3,455
4683 Model A02	1,440
Store Loop Cable (#4040)	41
Hand-Held Bar Code Reader (#4500)	950
Matrix Keyboard (#3323)	560
228mm (9 inch) Monochrome Display (#7428)	300
228mm Display Pedestal-Integrated (#7426)	70
228mm Display Pedestal-Distributed (#7429)	24
Integrated Display Cable (#8277)	60
Distributed Display Cable (#8278)	78

### Planned Availability Date:

December 31st, 1987 - 4683 Models A01/A02; #4500; #3323

January 29th, 1988 - #4000 (P/N 83X7601)

March 25th, 1988 - #7428

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

### Highlights

- 4683 Model A01 with 2,048K bytes of storage. Recommended when in-memory files within the 4683 are required.

- 4683 Model A02 with limited back-up capability. For use in store systems when the point of sale terminals are attached to either IBM Personal Computers or IBM Personal System/2 via the 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit.
- A Hand-Held Bar Code Reader reads UPC -- A/E, EAN -- 13/8, Code 39 and Interleaved 2 of 5 labels.
- A new Matrix Keyboard. Recommended for applications requiring a large number of pre-defined keys.
- A 228mm (9-inch) Monochrome Display with integrated and distributed pedestal and cable features.
- Attachment of the IBM 8503 Monochrome Display or 8513 Color Display.
- Store Loop Cable changed to chargeable special feature -- 4683 Model 001 purchase price is modified to allow for this change. User must indicate need for cable or indicate cable is not required.

### Description

#### • 4683 Model A01

The 4683 Model A01 is comprised of a base unit with 2,048K bytes of storage, a microprocessor, and cable receptacles that allow the attachment of all announced 4683 features and one 4683 Model 2. The base unit also has two slots that allow feature expansion options to be added that increase the number of input and output devices that can be attached. The increased storage permits the use of enriched applications, including in-memory memory files. The 4683 Model A01 terminal communicates with the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller via a high speed store loop at 38.4 kbs.

#### • 4683 Model A02

The 4683 Model A02 is comprised of a base unit with limited back-up capability when attached to an IBM Personal Computer or Personal System/2. It has the same input and output attachment capability as the Models 001 and A01. When the PC or PS/2 is non-operational the Model A02 is capable of the following: Item description (up to 20 characters) entry, price entry, automatic totaling, tax must be manually calculated, total displayed and change calculation, special separate back-up totals are

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

up-dated and the cash drawer is opened along with the printing of the customer receipt and journal entry. Full transaction data for later up-dating of files is printed on the journal roll.

#### **Attachable Displays**

**IBM 8503 Monochrome Display:** The monochrome display for the Personal System/2 announced in April 1987 is now available on the 4683. This display attaches to the 4683 via Feature Expansion A cards shipped after January 29, 1988. The display has the following characteristics: 12 inch monochrome display, tilt/swivel base, external brightness and contrast controls, paper-white phosphors coating on tube. Limitation: Cannot be used with Feature A Cards shipped prior to January 29, 1988.

**IBM 8513 Color Display:** The color display for the Personal System/2 announced in April 1987 is now available on the 4683. This display attaches to the 4683 via Feature Expansion A cards shipped after January 29, 1988. The display has the following characteristics: 12 inch color display -- 256 colors display capability (7 on 4683), tilt/swivel base, external brightness and contrast controls. Limitation: Cannot be used with Feature A Cards shipped prior to January 29, 1988.

#### **Special Features**

The following new special features apply to all models of the 4683.

**Hand-Held Bar Code Reader (#4500):** Reads bar codes utilizing LED (Light Emitting Diode) technology for lighting the label and CCD (Charge Coupled Diode) sensor for reading the label. The device reads UPC -- A/E, EAN -- 13/8, Code 39, and Interleaved 2 of 5 code. Also included is a device holder suitable for attachment to a checkstand. The Bar Code Reader is attached to the 4683 by cable. Limitation: Cannot be used with the 1520 Hand-Held Scanner. Maximum: One. Customer Setup: Yes.

**228mm (9 inch) Monochrome Display (#7428):** physically smaller than, but in amount of data and its presentation compatible with the 8503/8513 displays. It attaches to Feature Expansion A cards shipped after January 29, 1988. It can display 1000 characters (40X25). Limitation: Cannot be used with Feature A Cards shipped prior to January 29, 1988. Maximum: Two. Customer Setup: Yes.

**Store Loop Cable (#4040):** Provides the connection between the point of sale terminal and the store loop wiring. The shielded cable is 4 m (13 ft) long and has an IBM Cabling System data connector (self-shorting) at the end that connects to the store wiring and an SDL plug at the end that connects to the 4683 Model 1 or A01. Maximum: One. Customer Setup: Yes.

**Matrix Keyboard (#3323):** Provides item selection keys, numeric keys in a data entry arrangement, system function keys, an audible alarm and a managers override keylock. The item selection keys are fixed keys and are legended by a customer defined and removable overlay. A protective shield is used over the overlay. Each item selection key is under user-program control. The keyboard includes:

- 126 item selection keys in a 7 row by 18 column arrangement.
- 11-key keypad in data entry arrangement.

- Two system function keys.
- Manager's keylock.
- Four terminal status indicators.
- An audible alarm having 3 tone frequencies and 2 volume levels under program control.
- Set of labels that includes three overlays, one overlay protective shield, and one set of blank label sheets in six colors.

Note: See Customer Replaceable Parts for ordering additional overlays, protective shields and blank legend sheets.

The keyboard can be used in an integrated or distributed configuration (See the previously announced specify section for lock insert ordering instructions.) Prerequisite: Either the integrated (#3325) or Distributed (#3326) Keyboard Cable. Limitation: Cannot be used with the 50-key Modifiable Keyboard (#3320) or Alphanumeric Keyboard (#3322). Maximum: One. Customer Setup: Yes.

#### **Specify Options**

**50-Key Modifiable Keyboard Preprinted Legend Sheet:** Specify one of the following for each 50-Key Modifiable Keyboard (#3320) ordered.

- #9530 when preprinted legend sheets are required with the keyboard, or
- #9531 when legend sheets are not required

**4683 Model 2 Without Prerequisite Attachment Cables:** Specify #9520 when 4683 Model 2 attachment cables are not to be shipped with the machine.

The reference IBM Lock Serial number MM928 has been changed to MM987. The specify code (#9204) and the lock part number (# 4783904) remain the same.

#### **Machine Elements**

The Matrix Keyboard is available as a Machine Element. Machine Elements are ordered by part number and can be ordered independently of the 4683 base control unit. Machine Elements are not eligible for IBM Maintenance Agreement service when not used in conjunction with a 4683 base control unit, and are not eligible for discounts except under the Volume Procurement Amendment. Proof of purchase is required for warranty service. See "Charges" below for Machine Element Part Number and purchase price.

#### **Publications**

The appropriate 4680 Store Systems publications will be updated to reflect this announcement.

Additional copies of the publications are available immediately.

#### **Education Support**

See your IBM marketing representative for details.

#### **Schedule**

Planned availability is December 31st, 1987, for 4683 Models A01 and A02, the Hand-Held Bar Code Reader, and Matrix Keyboard; January 29th, 1988 for Feature Expansion A (#4000) P/N 83X7601; and March 25th, 1988 for the 228mm (9 inch) Monochrome Display.

## Technical Information

### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The 4683 Model A01 is attached via store loop wiring to an IBM 5170 Store Controller Model 849. Unless #9540 (no store loop cable) is specified, a Store Loop Cable (#4040) must be ordered.

The 4683 Model A02 is attached to an IBM Personal Computer or Personal System/2 via a 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit (#8314).

Attachment of the new displays; 228 mm Monochrome Display (#7428), 8503 Monochrome Display, and 8513 Color Display to all 4683s requires a Feature Expansion A Card (#4040) shipped after January 29, 1988-- Part Number 83X7601.

**Note:** Attachment of the old displays; 300 mm (12 inch) Monochrome Display (#3354) and 346 mm Color Display (#3352) requires a Feature Expansion A Card (#4040) shipped prior to January 29, 1988 -- Part Number 4783791.

**Programming Requirements:** Version 1, Release 3 of the IBM 4683 Operating System licensed program (5669-033) or equivalent is required for the 4683 Model A01, the Matrix Keyboard, new displays, and the Hand-Held Bar Code Reader support.

**Compatibility:** The 4683 Models A01 and A02 the three new displays, the Matrix Keyboard (#3323), and the Hand-held Bar Code Reader (#4500) are not compatible with IBM 3683/3684 or other previous IBM Store Systems or Point of Sale Terminals.

### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** The 4683 Models A01 and A02 are designated as customer setup as are the Hand-Held Bar Code Reader, the 228mm and 8503 Monochrome Displays and the 8513 Color Display, and the Matrix Keyboard. The customer is responsible for unpacking and setup of the components in accordance with the setup instructions provided by IBM.

**Cable Orders:** All I/O devices are cable attached to the 4683 base control unit. The basic I/O devices must be ordered with an integrated or distributed cable depending on the desired terminal configuration.

Cables must be ordered to connect the 4683 Model 002 to the 4683 model A01.

A store loop attachment cable must either be ordered or deliberately not ordered (#4040 or #9540) for each 4683 Model 001 and A01. The customer must provide all necessary cables and connectors for the store loop. See IBM 4680 Store Systems: Preparing Your Site (GA27-3692) for store loop and connector requirements.

**Installability:** All components of the 4683 have a numerical identification for ease of installation. Each special feature, its respective cable, and base control unit connector are identified by corresponding numbers. The customer setup procedures are sequenced using these numbers.

**Problem Determination:** During the warranty period the customer is responsible for identifying the failing element using the IBM provided procedures. After the warranty period the customer's responsibility is limited to identifying the failing machine with the IBM provided procedures.

**Packaging:** The 4683 Models 001 and A01 are shipped with a storage retention battery and the 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Installation Guide. The 4683 Models 002 and A02 are shipped with only the Installation Guide.

### Accessories

The following 4683 replacement parts are available for direct customer ordering and are not covered under the IBM Maintenance Agreement.

Customer replaceable parts may be ordered from:

IBM Corporation  
DCO Dept. N05  
P.O. Box 12845  
Lexington, KY 40583 or  
Call (606) 232-5831

**Matrix Keyboard Legend Sheets:** Blank legend sheets in a selection of six colors for the Matrix Keyboard. The legend sheets may be printed and the adhesive backed tabs removed and installed on the overlays listed below. The sheets are packaged in minimum ordering quantities of 10 by color. Order the following numbers:

Item	Color	IBM Part No.	Package Qty.
Blank Legends	White	76X0120	10
Blank Legends	Yellow	76X0121	10
Blank Legends	Red	76X0122	10
Blank Legends	Blue	76X0123	10
Blank Legends	Green	76X0124	10
Blank Legends	Tan	76X0125	10

**Matrix Keyboard Protective Overlay Shield:** A removable shield that protects a legended overlay installed on the Matrix Keyboard. The protective shields are packaged in minimum ordering quantities of five. Order P/N 76X0128.

**Matrix Keyboard Overlay:** Provides an overlay that can be legended either by direct printing the overlay or by using the adhesive legends from the legend sheets as noted above. The overlay is packaged in minimum ordering quantities of 10. Order P/N 76X0129.

Accessories and/or Supplies can be purchased from IBM's authorized distributors or from NDD's IBM Direct Response Operations (DRO). Call IBM DRO toll free at 1-800-IBM-2468. Mail orders should be sent to:

IBM Corporation  
IBM Direct Response Operations  
Systems Product Department  
One Culver Road  
Dayton, NJ 08810

### Security, Auditability, and Control

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communications facilities.

## Terms and Conditions

**Volume Purchase Discount:** Volume purchasing is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) to the Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines. The 4683 Model A01 and A02 are included in Category A of the IBM Store Systems Products VPA Exhibit No.: STOR-2.

For further information regarding volume orders, contact your IBM marketing representative.

**IBM Credit Corporation Financing:** Term leases and installment payment plans are available for commercial and state and local government customers.

**Customer Fulfillment Option Applies:** No

**Eligible Machine under Alternative Certification for IBM Machines:** No

**Warranty Period:** Three months

### Types of Service

- Warranty
  - Customer Carry-In Repair (CCR)
- Warranty Option
  - IBM On-Site Repair (IOR)
- IBM Maintenance Agreement
  - IBM On-Site Repair (IOR)

**Machine Group:** A

**IBM Hourly Service Rate Classification:** One.

**Corporate Service Amendment:** The 4683 is eligible for the Corporate Service Amendment to the IBM Maintenance Agreement.

**Mid-Range Service Amendment:** The 4683 is eligible for the Mid-Range Service Amendment to the IBM Maintenance Agreement.

**Product Availability Status:** New product available.

**Customer Setup:** Yes, CSU allowance is one day. IBM setup is available at the applicable IBM hourly service rate and terms.

**Pre-Installation Test Allowance:** None

**On-Site Allowance:** None

**Educational Allowance:** None.

## Charges

	Model Feature	Purchase Price
4683 Point of Sale Terminal	001	\$2,905 *
	A01	3,455
	A02	1,440
Matrix Keyboard	3323	560
Store Loop Cable	4040	41 *
Hand-held Bar Code Reader	4500	950
728 mm Monochrome Display	7428	300
228 mm Display Pedestal		
Integrated	7426	70
Distributed	7429	24
Display Cable		
Integrated	8277	60
Distributed	8278	78

\* Prices reflect change of cable to a chargeable special feature.

	Model/ Feature	Minimum Warranty Option Charge IOR	Annual Minimum Maintenance Charge IOR
4683 Point of Sale Terminal	001	\$ 129	\$ 162
	A01	143	172
	A02	72	85
Matrix Keyboard	3323	41	50
Hand-held Bar Code Reader	4500	23	30
228 mm Monochrome Display	7428	25	30

### Machine Element

	Part Number	Purchase Price
Matrix Keyboard	76X0110	\$560



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

November 24, 1987

## PROFESSIONAL CADAM<sup>1</sup> Release 2.0

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 is a highly interactive computer-aided design system which operates on the IBM RT/5080 Graphics System and the IBM RT Personal Computer<sup>TM</sup> configured with a native display. Enhancements to PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 include support for function key OVERLAY, the PROFESSIONAL CADAM Access Facility (a capability that allows users to access the PROFESSIONAL CADAM data base from other application programs) and an improved Data Transfer Facility that allows users to send and receive CADAM models during a PROFESSIONAL CADAM work session. In addition, PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 provides for the extraction of data from PROFESSIONAL CADAM models in a form suitable for input to MAPICS, COPICS, and other manufacturing production and planning systems. PROFESSIONAL CADAM functions include several options for creating geometric elements (points, lines, circles, splines, conic sections), annotation and attribute data, easy creation of true mathematical splines and ellipses, and the ability to project related orthographic and isometric views.

**One-Time Charge: \$10,000**

**Planned Availability Date: March 1988**

<sup>1</sup> Trademark of CADAM INC. CADAM is a registered trademark of CADAM INC.

<sup>TM</sup> Trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

**5669-193 PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0**

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Strategy

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 is to be highlighted as an integral member of the CADAM family of programs. All existing account situations should be reviewed and PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 should be sold to those customers who require full-function workstations, remote and/or secure projects, or who need to offload work from the host processor. Consistency with the host, in terms of usability and data compatibility, should be emphasized.

#### Marketing Action Required

All existing proposals should be reviewed and updated with PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS 5669" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

Area, Region, and local CIM units, as well as area CAD/CAM marketing units, will provide first-level support for branch offices. This includes account qualification, briefings, demonstrations, account strategy sessions, proposal assistance, and marketing consultation.

The CAD/CAM Support Centers in Dallas and Los Angeles will provide second-level support with area nomination. This includes technical and marketing consultation, preparation of standard demonstrations, internal education, customer briefings, and custom demonstrations.

**Demonstrations:** Demonstrations will be available from the CIM and CAD/CAM marketing units in each area. IBM RT Personal Computer equipment will be available through the areas for demonstrations. Demonstrations will also be available through the Customer Centers with help from area CIM personnel.

#### Education Support

The PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Manual (SH20-7073) is available for new and experienced CADAM users. This manual is shipped with each copy of the software or may be ordered separately.

#### HONE Information

Proposal material will not be available through HONE.

#### Installation Information

##### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by the CAD/CAM Support Centers located in Dallas and Los Angeles.

**Field Support:** System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSYSTEM and HONE EQUAL. Before authoring an EQUAL question, system engineers should research their questions in publications and using HONE INFOSYSTEM using the primary product keywords (CADAM, CAD, CAE, CAD/CAM, engineering graphics).

**Direct Customer Support:** IBM will provide direct installation and usage support to eligible customers through ASKINFO. Those customers who sign a Volume

Procurement Amendment (VPA) (minimum four systems) will be eligible for 12 months of support. Those customers who buy fewer than four systems may be enrolled at the branch's discretion. In this situation, the branch can enroll one contact per enterprise per office. This customer will receive six months of support. For registration guidelines, refer to EQUAL item 343MG.

#### **Administrative Information**

##### ***Volume Discount***

The VPA for Machines and Programs (Z125-3980) and the Exhibit for IBM CAD/CAM Licensed Programs (VP5600-2) must be used for all new volume commitments. For additional information, see IBM Marketing Announcement 387-095, dated June 16, 1987.

##### ***Ordering Information***

***Special Software Instructions:*** Administrators responsible for ordering this program should understand that PROFESSIONAL CADAM (5669-193) is subject to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs and will be distributed by IBM Software Distribution. These circumstances produce new administrative considerations. Refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG4.

***Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:*** The program in this announcement is available under the provisions of the VPA for Machines and Programs. For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

##### ***Programming RPQs***

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

##### ***Sponsoring Executive***

D. R. LeGrande  
General Manager, Industrial Sector



# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

November 24, 1987

## PROFESSIONAL CADAM<sup>1</sup> Release 2.0

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 is a highly interactive computer-aided design system which operates on the IBM RT/5080 Graphics System and the IBM RT Personal Computer<sup>TM</sup> configured with a native display. Enhancements to PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 include support for function key OVERLAY, the PROFESSIONAL CADAM Access Facility (a capability that allows users to access the PROFESSIONAL CADAM data base from other application programs) and an improved Data Transfer Facility that allows users to send and receive CADAM models during a PROFESSIONAL CADAM work session. In addition, PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 provides for the extraction of data from PROFESSIONAL CADAM models in a form suitable for input to MAPICS, COPICS, and other manufacturing production and planning systems. PROFESSIONAL CADAM functions include several options for creating geometric elements (points, lines, circles, splines, conic sections), annotation and attribute data, easy creation of true mathematical splines and ellipses, and the ability to project related orthographic and isometric views.

One-Time Charge: \$10,000

Planned Availability Date: March 1988

<sup>1</sup> Trademark of CADAM INC. CADAM is a registered trademark of CADAM INC.

<sup>TM</sup> Trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

5669-193 PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0

### Highlights

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 contains the following functions not available in PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 1.2:

- Support for function key OVERLAY analogous to that in Release 20.2 of mainframe CADAM. Up to 200 overlays per parent model are supported. Individual models may be attached to multiple parents.
- An enhanced data transfer facility is available for PROFESSIONAL CADAM systems which are physically linked to mainframe CADAM via the IBM RT Workstation Host Interface Program (WHIP) or the IBM RT 3278/79 Emulation Licensed Program (5669-052). This enhancement provides for the interactive transfer of drawings during a PROFESSIONAL CADAM session. PROFESSIONAL CADAM systems physically linked to mainframe

CADAM may view and select from mainframe CADAM drawing indexes. Drawings may be transferred between PROFESSIONAL CADAM, mainframe CADAM, and MICRO CADAM<sup>2</sup>.

- Support of the PROFESSIONAL CADAM access facility, a capability that allows users to access the PROFESSIONAL CADAM data base from other programs.
- Provision for an interface that extracts data, such as bill-of-material information from PROFESSIONAL CADAM models and creates a generic manufacturing file. The extraction data formats can be obtained by referencing the Engineering to Manufacturing Interface Program Manual (SH23-6017). This interface is designed to be the basis for input to manufacturing production planning applications, such as COPICS and MAPICS.

Previously available highlights include:

- Application support for the IBM 5081 Display Model 16 and 19 when attached to the IBM RT Personal Computer with an IBM Megapel Adapter or when used with the IBM RT/5080 Graphics System
- Application support for the IBM 6153, 6154, and 6155 displays when attached to the IBM RT Personal Computer
- National language support is provided to enable the use of international keyboards.

<sup>2</sup> Trademark of CADAM INC.

### Description

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 is a highly interactive computer-aided design system for engineers, architects, designers, draftsmen, technical illustrators, and other technical professionals. PROFESSIONAL CADAM functions include several options for creating geometric elements (points, lines, circles, splines, conic sections), annotation and attribute data, easy creation of true mathematical splines and ellipses, the ability to create related orthogonal views and then create an isometric (3-D appearing) view in a computer-assisted manner. PROFESSIONAL CADAM provides the user with a choice of dimensioning standards including International Organization for Standardization (ISO)/R129-1959(E), and American National Standard Institute (ANSI) Y14.5M-1982.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

The PROFESSIONAL CADAM user interface is nearly identical to that of CADAM Interactive Design Version 2. This similarity allows an experienced CADAM operator to move to the workstation version without retraining. The lighted program-function keyboard and the tablet are the same devices as those used with CADAM Interactive Design Version 2. Because PROFESSIONAL CADAM allows the transfer of CADAM drawings between the workstation and the host CADAM system, a data base of models and plotting facilities at the host may be utilized.

Models created on PROFESSIONAL CADAM are compatible with CADAM Release 19.2 or later. The ability to transfer such models to a particular CADAM installation is dependent upon the PROFESSIONAL CADAM user properly defining the compatibility parameters. The PROFESSIONAL CADAM system queries the user for the necessary information at installation time or by the user at the drawing level. Models are also compatible with the MICRO CADAM Data Transfer Utility (5713-AAM), provided that the model size does not exceed the maximum allowable on MICRO CADAM systems. Models may be created, viewed, or updated in any of the three environments. There are some restrictions when transferring models between PROFESSIONAL CADAM, MICRO CADAM, and the host.

CADAM Interactive Design Version 2 functions that are not supported by PROFESSIONAL CADAM include Analysis 2, macro geometry, numerical control, flange angle splines, and stretch.

PROFESSIONAL CADAM may be installed by any user with basic knowledge of the IBM RT Personal Computer and its operating system. An easy-to-use User's Guide provides in-depth descriptions and examples of the available PROFESSIONAL CADAM menu options and operations.

PROFESSIONAL CADAM offers a secure yet flexible design and engineering environment. For sites that require the protection of documents and drawings, the user may control access not only to the computer system, but also to the application and the drawing data base by using PROFESSIONAL CADAM or the IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Interactive Executive (AIX)<sup>™</sup> Release 2.1.1 or higher (5601-061) Operating System. This access control allows the applications and files to be selectively accessed by authorized users only.

A data transfer facility allows users to transfer models, in either direction, between the workstation and the host CADAM. Utilities to create and read a file that may be transferred between PROFESSIONAL CADAM and MICRO CADAM Data Transfer Utility (5713-AAM) are also provided. It is the user's responsibility to provide the communications capability necessary to move files between the RT Personal Computer and a Personal Computer/AT®, which may be done by floppy disk or via serial ports.

PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 contains the following functions or features not available in PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 1.2:

- Support for function key OVERLAY analogous to that in Release 20.2 of mainframe CADAM. Up to 200 overlays per parent model are supported. Individual models may be attached to multiple parents.
- An enhanced data transfer facility is available for PROFESSIONAL CADAM systems which are physically linked to mainframe CADAM via the IBM RT Workstation Host Interface Program (WHIP) or the

IBM RT 3278/79 Emulation Licensed Program (5669-052). This enhancement provides for the interactive transfer of drawings during a PROFESSIONAL CADAM session. PROFESSIONAL CADAM systems physically linked to mainframe CADAM may view and select from mainframe CADAM drawing indexes. Drawings may be transferred between PROFESSIONAL CADAM, mainframe CADAM, and MICRO CADAM.

- Support of the PROFESSIONAL CADAM access facility, a capability that allows users to access the PROFESSIONAL CADAM data base from other programs.
- Provision for an interface that extracts data such as bill-of-material information from PROFESSIONAL CADAM models and creates a generic manufacturing file. The extraction data formats can be obtained by referencing the Engineering to Manufacturing Interface Program Manual (SH23-6017). This interface is designed to be the basis for input to manufacturing production planning applications, such as COPICS and MAPICS.

® Registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

## Publications

The following publications will be shipped with PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0:

- Licensed Program Specifications (GH20-5380)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide (SH20-7072)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide Tabs (SX23-2004)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide Binder (SX23-2001)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course (SH20-7073)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course Tabs (SX23-2003)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course Binder (SX23-2002)
- Diskette Holder for Binder (SX23-2000)
- CADAM Template -- 5080 Model 1 (SX20-2424)
- CADAM Template -- 5080 Model 2 (SX20-0293)
- PROFESSIONAL CADAM Installation Guide (SH23-0132).

Additional copies are available. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

## Education Support

The PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Manual (SH20-7073) is available for new and experienced CADAM users. This manual is shipped with each copy of the software or may be ordered separately.

## Schedule

Availability is planned for March, 1988.

## Technical Information

### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** One of the following minimum configurations:

- IBM RT Personal Computer Model A25. The Model A25 provides a Model 25 without a keyboard (in this configuration, the 5080 keyboard serves for the

system functions) and includes the IBM RT Personal Computer 5080 Attachment Adapter (#7860).

- IBM RT Personal Computer Floating Point Accelerator (#4758) or IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer System Unit/Keyboard Model 25

- IBM RT Personal Computer 5080 Attachment Adapter (#7860), required for 5080 Display System configuration
- IBM RT Personal Computer Floating Point Accelerator (#4758), or IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer System Unit/Keyboard Model 20

- IBM RT Personal Computer 1Mb Memory Expansion (#8222), required
- IBM RT Personal Computer 5080 Attachment Adapter (#7860), required for 5080 Display System configuration
- IBM RT Personal Computer Floating Point Accelerator (#4758), or IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer Model 15. This model requires the native display system configuration.

- IBM RT Personal Computer Floating Point Accelerator (#4758), or IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer Model B25. The Model B25 provides a Model 125 without a keyboard (in this configuration, the 5080 keyboard serves for the system functions) and includes the IBM RT Personal Computer 5080 Attachment Adapter (#7860)

- IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer System Unit/Keyboard Model 125

- IBM RT Personal Computer 5080 Attachment Adapter (#7860), required for 5080 Display System configuration
- IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer Model 115. This model requires the native display system configuration

- IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Floating Point Accelerator (#6815), required

One of the following display systems:

- 5080 Display System

- IBM 5081 Display
- IBM 5085 Graphics Processor, required
  - IBM RT Personal Computer/5080 Attachment Package (#6150) (For field installation on 5085 Model 1)
  - Graphics keyboard (#4651), required
  - Lighted Program Function Keyboard (#4710), optional
  - Dials (#8710), optional
  - Transform and Clipping feature (#1021), required
  - Four bit planes [the addition of one feature code (#3621) provides the user with 24 colors, an additional feature code (#3621) raises the number of available colors to the user to 120] (See Note #4.)
  - Monochrome Display not supported
  - System Memory Extension - 512K minimum is required, but 1200K minimum is highly recommended.
  - 5083 Tablet with cursor, required (See Note #2.)
  - IBM Personal Computer Monochrome Display and Printer Adapter (#4900), required (See Note #1.)
  - IBM Personal Computer Monochrome Display (#1001), required (See Note #1.)

The following chart serves to clarify the pixel memory required:

	PIXEL MEMORY	5080 COLORS	USER DEFINED
	AVAILABLE COLORS		
Model 1A	4 Planes	16	0
Model 1A + 1(#3621)	6 Planes	64	24
Model 1A + 2(#3621)	8 Planes	256	120
Model 2/2A	8 Planes	256	120

- One of the following native display systems:

- 5081 Model 16 or 19 display with the IBM Megapal Display Adapter (#7658)
  - 5083 Tablet with cursor and 5083 Tablet Cable Kit (#7586) (See Note #2.) or mouse (#8426), required
  - 5081 Line Cord (#2001), required

or

- 6153 Advanced Monochrome Graphics Display with the Advanced Monochrome Graphics Display Adapter (#4765)
  - 5083 Tablet with cursor and 5083 Tablet Cable Kit (#7586) (See Note #2.) or mouse (#8426), required

or

- 6154 Advanced Color Graphics Display with the Advanced Color Graphics Display Adapter (#4766).
  - 5083 Tablet with cursor and 5083 Tablet Cable Kit (#7586) (See Note #2.) or mouse (#8426), required

or

- 6155 Extended Monochrome Graphics Display with the Extended Monochrome Graphics Display Adapter (#4768)
  - 5083 Tablet with cursor and 5083 Tablet Cable Kit (#7586) (See Note #2.) or mouse (#8426), required

The following optional features may be installed and used with PROFESSIONAL CADAM:

- Lighted Program Function Keyboard (#4710), 5080 Peripheral Adapter (#7561), and 5080 Peripheral Cable Kit (#7564) required to install the Lighted Program Function Keyboard on a native display.
- IBM RT Personal Computer 3278/79 Emulation Adapter (#5050) (See Note #3.)
  - A customer supplied cable for connection to one of the following:
    - IBM 3174 Control Unit
    - IBM 3274 Control Unit
    - IBM 4361 Display/Printer Adapter or Work Station Adapter
    - IBM 9370 Work Station Adapter

or

- IBM System/370 Host Interface Adapter (#7893) (See Note #3.)
  - 5088 Graphics Channel Controller, required
- IBM RT Personal Computer 6157 Streaming Tape Drive (#8184)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 6157 Streaming Tape Drive Adapter (#4797)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 1Mb Memory Expansion (#8222) (See Note #5.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 2Mb Memory Expansion (#4739) (See Note #5.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 4Mb Memory Expansion (#3156) (See Note #5.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 4Mb Fast Memory Expansion (#7004) (See Note #6.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 8Mb Fast Memory Expansion (#7008) (See Note #6.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 40Mb Fixed-Disk Drive (#4735) (See Note #7.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 70Mb Fixed-Disk Drive (#6941) (See Note #7.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 70Mb Fixed-Disk Drive (#3988) (See Note #8.)
- IBM RT Personal Computer 114Mb Fixed-Disk Drive (#3272) (See Note #8)
- IBM 9332 Direct Access Storage Device, and IBM RT PC Small Computer Systems Interface Adapter (#7000)
- IBM Color Pen Plotters
- IBM RT Personal Computer Models 15, 25, and A25 can be upgraded to Models 115, 125, and B25 respectively, with the IBM RT PC New Model Series Upgrade Kit (61X6833).

Notes:

1. A display and display adapter, other than the IBM 5080, is required to start the IBM RT Personal Computer and run other applications. The IBM Personal Computer Monochrome Display is an entry-level display. Any of the display systems that

operate with the IBM RT Personal Computer may be used for this purpose.

2. The 5083 Model 2 is not supported.
3. Either the IBM Personal Computer 3278/79 Emulator Adapter or the IBM System/370 Host Interface Adapter is required if host communications or model transfer is required.
4. The first four bit planes are used by the system. Therefore, additional bit planes are required if the user wishes to take advantage of color support in PROFESSIONAL CADAM.
5. This option only available with Models 15, 20, 25, or A25.
6. This option only available with Models 115, 125, or B25.
7. This option only available with Models 20, 25, or A25.
8. This option only available with Models 125 or B25.

#### **Programming Requirements:**

- IBM RT Personal Computer AIX Operating System 2.1.1 or higher (5601-061)
- IBM RT Personal Computer Personal graPHIGS™ (5669-167). The most current release of graPHIGS at the time of availability will be required.
- IBM RT Personal Computer 3278/79 Emulation Licensed Program 1.1.1, or higher (5669-052)

or

- IBM RT Personal Computer Workstation Host Interface Program (5601-039), one of which is required for host communications.
- IBM RT PC FORTRAN 77 Compiler Version 1 (5669-054)

or

- IBM RT PC VS FORTRAN Compiler Version 1 (5601-037), one of which is required for PROFESSIONAL CADAM Access Facility.

**Compatibility:** CADAM 2 1/2-D models may be transferred between PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0, MICRO CADAM, and System/370-based systems running CADAM Release 19.2 or later. These models can then be viewed and/or modified in either environment. Some model compatibility restrictions do apply.

#### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

PROFESSIONAL CADAM uses the security and auditability features of the IBM RT Personal Computer Advanced Interactive Executive Operating System. User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

PROFESSIONAL CADAM is protected against unauthorized usage by a software asset protection mechanism. This protection mechanism requires that the user call IBM for a software key number when the licensed program is initially installed. Instructions are included with each order.

## Ordering Information

### Current Licensees

Current licensees of PROFESSIONAL CADAM will receive this update from IBM Software Distribution automatically. This shipment of Release 2, modification level 0 will be completed within two weeks of planned availability.

### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a scheduled ship date later than planned availability of PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 2.0 is requested, PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 1.2 will be shipped.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4620 for a One-Time Charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select feature number 5858 for the 1.2Mb diskettes.

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material:

Title	Order Number
Licensed Program Specifications	GH20-5380
PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide	SH20-7072
PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide Tabs	SX23-2004
PROFESSIONAL CADAM User Guide Binder	SX23-2001
PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course	SH20-7073
PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course Tabs	SX23-2003
PROFESSIONAL CADAM Basic Self-Study Course Binder	SX23-2002
Diskette Holder for Binder	SX23-2000
CADAM Template -- 5080 Model 1	SX20-2424
CADAM Template -- 5080 Model 2	SX20-0293
PROFESSIONAL CADAM Installation Guide	SH23-0132

Additional copies are available. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** This program is licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used, except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the Exhibit for IBM CAD/CAM Licensed Programs (VP5600-2). The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the One-Time Charge option:

Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Discount Percent
5	5%
11	10%
21	15%
31	20%

The licensed program in this announcement is in Category A.

**Warranted:** Yes.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted materials: No. This licensed program will be available without source licensed program materials for some modules. These modules will be available in object code. The remaining modules will be available with source licensed program materials.

**Testing Period:** None.

**Program Services:** Central Service will be available until October 1, 1988, under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs. Completed APARS should be mailed to the following address:

IBM Corporation  
Department 75E  
11601 Wilshire Boulevard  
Los Angeles, CA 90025-1738  
Attention: PROFESSIONAL CADAM APAR Coordinator

Customers who have been registered may also submit APARS electronically, directly to the appropriate IBM software defect support center utilizing IBM's Customer Direct Electronic APAR Support System (APAR/SYS).

### Charges

Program Number	One-Time Charge
5669-193	\$10,000

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a One-Time Charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## MICRO CADAM<sup>1</sup> Repackaged and Repriced

MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 combines the functions of MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL), MICRO CADAM Data Transfer (5713-AAM), and MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface Program (5713-AAN) into a single product. MICRO CADAM Cornerstone, a new entry level product, is a 2-1/2-dimensional interactive computer-aided design system functionally equivalent to the MICRO CADAM Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL). MICRO CADAM Cornerstone uses an on-screen menu to select application functions rather than the lighted program function keypad that is included in the MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 convenience kit. Both products support the IBM Personal Computer AT® and the IBM Personal System/2™.

MICRO CADAM Cornerstone is available as a convenience kit. MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 is available as a program package or in a convenience kit that includes required interfaces and input devices.

MICRO CADAM Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL), MICRO CADAM Data Transfer (5713-AAM), and MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface Program (5713-AAN) will be withdrawn from marketing effective December 24, 1987.

### Charges:

MICRO CADAM Cornerstone (Convenience Kit)	\$2,995
MICRO CADAM (Convenience Kit)	\$6,495
MICRO CADAM (Program package)	\$5,400

Planned Availability Date: December 24, 1987 -- MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 and MICRO CADAM Cornerstone.

<sup>1</sup> Trademark of CADAM Inc.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5713-ADH MICRO CADAM Cornerstone  
5713-ADJ MICRO CADAM Release 1.2

### Marketing Information

Orders for MICRO CADAM (5713-AAL), MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface (5713-AAN), and MICRO CADAM Data Transfer Utility (5713-AAM) are withdrawn from marketing effective December 24, 1987. Orders placed after the withdrawal date will not be filled.

### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

### Marketing Strategy

MICRO CADAM is now offered as two related products: MICRO CADAM Cornerstone, a low-priced, entry level workstation system, and MICRO CADAM Release 1.2, reduced in price and containing the (previously separate) Data Transfer and Geometry Interface functions.

Both products offer a cost effective solution to placing a CADAM workstation on the desktops of managers, checkers, detailers, manufacturing engineers, and others not involved in production drafting but who would like to have easy access to CADAM Drawings.

### Marketing Action Required

Customers who have the withdrawn programs on order will be sent the attached Notice to IBM Customers. Marketing representatives must contact these customers immediately and alter existing orders as directed by the customer. Outstanding bids and proposals must also be updated.

### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5713". MV also is available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

Area, region, and local computer-integrated manufacturing units will provide first-level support for branch offices. This includes qualification, briefings, demonstrations, account strategy sessions, proposal assistance and marketing consultation for accounts with potential for significant volume procurements.

The CAD/CAM Support Centers in Los Angeles and Dallas provide second-level support with area nomination. This includes technical and marketing consultation for accounts with potential for significant volume procurements.

**Demonstrations:** Demonstrations will be available from the computer-integrated manufacturing units in each area.

## **HONE Information**

Proposal material will not be available through HONE.

The configuration aid CFPC is available through HONE and to customers eligible to use INFOExpress. The fast path name is CFPC.

## **Installation Information**

### **Installation Support**

Installation and technical support are provided by the CAD/CAM Support Centers in Los Angeles and Dallas.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialists for technical marketing assistance. Systems engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSYSTEM and HONE EQUAL. Systems engineers should research their questions in INFOSYSTEM using the search word "MICRO CADAM", with the branch specialist, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

**Direct Customer Support:** Eligible customers may obtain installation and usage assistance from the Workstation Customer Assistance Center through ASKINFO. To obtain information on customer eligibility and registration procedures, refer to HONE SUPPORTINFO using the search words "PC customer direct eligibility".

In addition, a free hotline service is available from CADAM INC under a separate agreement. Contact 818-840-8208 in California and 800-626-6012 outside California.

## **Administrative Information**

### **Volume Discount**

**Special Bid Transition:** The announced program will be added automatically to the category of a special bid exhibit with the same program aggregation as Category D and E of the standard Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs, provided there is a commitment to the affected special bid exhibit category, the discount schedule for the special bid does not exceed the discount schedule of the standard VPA Exhibit category, and the contract period is either the same as the standard VPA Exhibit for commercial customers, or 12 or 24 months for state and local government customers. (Exception: does not apply automatically to the non-US portion of an IVPA even if conditions are met.)

Branch office administration must complete the EZFORM "REGISTER" and submit the form to Asset Management, Rockville, MD to have the special bid contract file updated to reflect this announcement.

If a customer requests it, an updated special bid contract will be available through the appropriate ISG Contract Practices department in Atlanta or White Plains at the time the revised VPA Exhibit is available. Interim to the availability of the revised Eligible Program List, the programs may be added to the applicable category in the space provided on the Eligible Program List.

If there is a requirement to add the announced program to a special bid not qualifying for automatic addition, a special bid request must be submitted via the Multiples Marketing Support System (MMSS).

Customers with a special bid that is automatically updated to include the announced program must be notified within 10 days of this announcement and such notification must be documented with a locally initiated control list indicating the date of notification and the name of the customer executive notified. A branch-prepared Notice should be sent. If a Notice to IBM Customers is included with this announcement, it should not be used since it only applies to VPA customers with the standard VPA and VPA Exhibit in effect and not special bid customers.

### **Administrative Action Required**

**Customer Notification:** Customers who have the withdrawn programs on order must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 calendar days of this announcement.

A Customer Notification Control List of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the notice are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**VPA/QDA Customers Notification:** Within 10 calendar days after this announcement, the attached Notice to IBM Customers, but not the revised VPA or QDA Exhibit, if included with this announcement, must be sent by the branch office to all customers with a VPA Eligible Program List for CAD/CAM Products, QDA Exhibit for IBM CAD/CAM Licensed Programs or special bid in effect.

This customer notification must be documented with a locally initiated control listing documenting the mailing dates, or, if hand delivered, the date and name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered. File this control list locally for future reference to substantiate proof of customer notification.

### **Ordering Information**

Programs in this announcement are licensed under the provisions of the IBM Program License Agreement and are ordered as type/model program numbers and shipped from IBM Software Distribution. For additional processing information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG5.

Program Packages include program diskettes with documentation and a software security device. The Convenience Kit contains program diskettes with documentation and required hardware.

For each Program Package or Convenience Kit ordered, enter the program number with the appropriate feature numbers as follows:

#### **MICRO CADAM Cornerstone**

Program Number	Order Type	Asset	Feature Nos.		
			Media	Charge	Media
5713-ADH	Convenience Kit	9001	5075	4786	3.5
	Convenience Kit	9001	5074	4786	5.25

#### **MICRO CADAM Release 1.2**

Program Number	Order Type	Asset	Feature Nos.		
			Media	Charge	Media
5713-ADJ	Program Package	9001	5072	4784	3.5
	Convenience Kit	9001	5073	4785	3.5
	Program Package	9001	5070	4784	5.25
	Convenience Kit	9001	5071	4785	5.25

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are eligible for volume discounting. For information regarding VPA registration and processing, refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPFL5.

#### **Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

#### **Attachment Information**

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 287-544-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers, IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

D. R. LeGrande  
General Manager, Industrial Sector





International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 1, 1987

### IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective December 24, 1987, IBM will withdraw from marketing the following licensed programs:

Program Number	Program Name	VPA/QDA Category
5713-AAL	MICRO CADAM	D
5713-AAN	MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface Program	E
5713-AAM	MICRO CADAM Data Transfer Utility	E

Marketing representatives will contact customers with these programs on-order and alter orders as directed by the customer.

The withdrawn programs will be removed from the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Eligible Program List for CAD/CAM Products and the Quantity Discount Agreement (QDA) Exhibit for CAD/CAM Licensed Programs on the effective date of withdrawal. Orders placed after the withdrawal date will not be filled. Requests for deferrals of orders beyond one month following the date of withdrawal will result in the cancellation of the order.

If you have questions regarding this notification, contact your IBM marketing representative.

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## MICRO CADAM<sup>1</sup> Repackaged and Repriced

MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 combines the functions of MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL), MICRO CADAM Data Transfer (5713-AAM), and MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface Program (5713-AAN) into a single product. MICRO CADAM Cornerstone, a new entry level product, is a 2-1/2-dimensional interactive computer-aided design system functionally equivalent to the MICRO CADAM Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL). MICRO CADAM Cornerstone uses an on-screen menu to select application functions rather than the lighted program function keypad that is included in the MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 convenience kit. Both products support the IBM Personal Computer AT<sup>®</sup> and the IBM Personal System/2<sup>™</sup>.

MICRO CADAM Cornerstone is available as a convenience kit. MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 is available as a program package or in a convenience kit that includes required interfaces and input devices.

MICRO CADAM Base Interactive Program (5713-AAL), MICRO CADAM Data Transfer (5713-AAM), and MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface Program (5713-AAN) will be withdrawn from marketing effective December 24, 1987.

### Charges:

MICRO CADAM Cornerstone (Convenience Kit)	\$2,995
MICRO CADAM (Convenience Kit)	\$6,495
MICRO CADAM (Program package)	\$5,400

**Planned Availability Date: December 24, 1987 -- MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 and MICRO CADAM Cornerstone.**

<sup>1</sup> Trademark of CADAM Inc.

<sup>®</sup> Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

<sup>™</sup> Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5713-ADH MICRO CADAM Cornerstone  
5713-ADJ MICRO CADAM Release 1.2

### Highlights

- IBM Personal System/2 support
- On-screen menu support
- Filled and hatched dittos and symbols
- Stretch function
- Multiline function
- Section analysis
- Plotter "pen weight" control, units per inch, character width specification
- Redirectable recovery file
- Metafile function

### Description

The MICRO CADAM licensed programs include many of the interactive design functions of the CADAM Interactive Design System Version 2 licensed program used on IBM host systems. Users may create production drawings, including isometric and other auxiliary views, points, lines, circles, ellipses, splines, dimensions, and symbol tables. They may also move, scale, rotate, or edit drawing elements, separate assembly drawings into individual details to show exploded views, and plot drawings.

The following enhancements are included in both MICRO CADAM Cornerstone and MICRO CADAM Release 1.2:

- IBM Personal System/2 Support -- IBM Personal System/2 Models 30, 50, 60, and 80 with the 8512, 8513, and 8514 display systems are supported MICRO CADAM workstation configurations.
- On-Screen Menu -- The pointing device can be used to select MICRO CADAM functions from a matrix or side-screen menu.
- Filled and hatched dittos and symbols -- Filled and hatched dittos and symbols can be created, displayed and plotted.
- Stretch Function -- User defined groups of drawing geometry can be "stretched" while maintaining connectivity between the elements.
- Multiline Function -- User can create multiple contiguous lines for electronics applications.
- Section Analysis -- Section analysis provides for the calculation of moment of inertia, center of gravity and area of closed sections.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

- Plotter Pen Control -- Light, medium, or heavy line weights may be specified for plotting of drawing elements.
- Units Per Inch -- User can specify the value for units per inch.
- Character Width -- User can specify the default value for width of characters.
- Redirect of the Recovery File -- User can specify drive on which the recovery file is to be stored.
- Metafile Support -- A driver is provided that converts a MICRO CADAM drawing to a graphics metafile for use with publishing applications.

Data Transfer and Geometry Interface, formerly available as separate optional programs, are now included in MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 and the price has been reduced for the complete package

- Geometry Interface function provides a set of FORTRAN-callable routines that allow user-written programs to input and retrieve geometric information from MICRO CADAM drawing files.
- Data Transfer facility allows users to prepare models for exchange between MICRO CADAM workstations and other CADAM workstation and host systems.

Since some host CADAM and PROFESSIONAL CADAM drawing files may contain elements not supported in MICRO CADAM, there are some restrictions on the types of elements that may be transferred.

CADAM Interactive Design Version 2 functions that are not supported by MICRO CADAM include Analysis II, Macro Geometry, Overlay, Surface, and Numeric Control. The model size in MICRO CADAM is limited to approximately 15K words. All arithmetic in MICRO CADAM is done in single precision. Some functions are not supported, and there may be fewer ways to do a given task such as, options in plotting a model, than in host CADAM or PROFESSIONAL CADAM.

## Publications

The following publications are shipped as documentation with the referenced program:

- MICRO CADAM Cornerstone
  - MICRO CADAM Systems User Guide (LH23-0141)
  - MICRO CADAM Basic Self-Study Course (LH23-0140)
  - MICRO CADAM Cornerstone Installation Guide (LH23-6114)
- MICRO CADAM Release 1.2
  - MICRO CADAM Systems User Guide (LH23-0141)
  - MICRO CADAM Basic Self-Study Course (LH23-0140)
  - MICRO CADAM Installation Guide (LH23-0142)
  - MICRO CADAM Data Transfer Utility User Guide (LH23-0138)
  - MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface User Guide (LH23-0139)

Additional copies of the above licensed publications will not be available.

The following unlicensed documentation is also shipped with the program:

- Self Study Binder (SX23-2006)
- Self Study Tabs (SX23-2003)
- User Guide Binder (SX23-2005)
- User Guide Tabs (SX23-2007)

Additional copies of the unlicensed documentation are available. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

## Education Support

A self-study course is provided with each copy of MICRO CADAM Cornerstone and MICRO CADAM Release 1.2. This course includes instructions using sample models to teach a user the standard operations of the MICRO CADAM system.

## Schedule

Planned availability of MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 and MICRO CADAM Cornerstone is December 24, 1987

## Technical Information

### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The minimum configuration required to operate the MICRO CADAM Cornerstone consists of:

- An IBM Personal Computer AT (5170 except AT/370) with a keyboard and:
  - 640Kb of main storage
  - Math Co-processor
  - One dual-sided diskette drive and associated adapter
  - One of the following displays and associated adapter:
    - IBM Enhanced Graphics Display
    - IBM Professional Graphics Display<sup>1</sup>
  - 20Mb fixed disk drive
  - Mouse Model M3, manufactured by Mouse Systems, Inc. or equivalent (IBM part number 6403663; Machine Type 1599-A01 Feature 7530)
  - Serial/Parallel Adapter
- An IBM Personal System/2, Models 30, 50, 60 and 80
  - 640Kb of main storage
  - Math Co-processor
  - 20Mb fixed disk drive
  - One dual-sided diskette drive and associated adapter.
  - Dual Async Adapter on PS/2 Models 50, 60, and 80 (only for plotter/printer)
  - Serial/Parallel Adapter on PS/2 Model 30 (only for plotter/printer)

- Mouse Model M3, manufactured by Mouse Systems, Inc. or equivalent (IBM part number 6403663; Machine Type 1599-A01 Feature 7530)
- One of the following displays and associated adapter<sup>3</sup>
  - IBM 8512 Color Display
  - IBM 8513 Color Display
  - IBM 8514 Color Display

The minimum configuration required to operate the MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 consists of:

- An IBM Personal Computer AT (5170 except AT/370) with a keyboard and:
  - 640Kb of main storage
  - Math Co-processor
  - One dual-sided diskette drive and associated adapter
  - One of the following displays and associated adapter:
    - IBM Enhanced Graphics Display
    - IBM Professional Graphics Display<sup>1</sup>
  - 20Mb Fixed Disk Drive
  - Mouse Model M3, manufactured by Mouse Systems, Inc.<sup>2</sup> or equivalent (IBM part number 6403663; Machine Type 1599-A01 Feature 7530)
  - Lighted Program Function Keypad Model MCD05 manufactured by CADAM INC<sup>2</sup>, or equivalent
  - Mouse/Keypad Interface Board Number MCD06 manufactured by CADAM INC<sup>2</sup>, or equivalent
  - An IBM 3278/79 Emulation Adapter (only for data transfer to a host CADAM application)
  - Serial/Parallel Adapter (only for plotter/printer)
- An IBM Personal System/2, Models 30, 50, 60 and 80
  - 640Kb of main storage
  - Math Co-processor
  - 20Mb Fixed Disk Drive
  - One dual-sided diskette drive and associated adapter.
  - IBM 3270 Connection Adapter on PS/2 Models 50, 60 and 80 (only for data transfer to a host CADAM application)
  - An IBM 3278/79 Emulation Adapter on PS/2 Model 30 (only for data transfer to a host CADAM application)
  - Dual Async Adapter on PS/2 Models 50, 60, and 80
  - Serial/Parallel Adapter on PS/2 Model 30
  - Mouse Model M3, manufactured by Mouse Systems, Inc.<sup>2</sup> or equivalent (IBM part number 6403663; Machine Type 1599-A01 Feature 7530)
  - Lighted Program Function Keypad Model MCD05 manufactured by CADAM INC<sup>2</sup>, or equivalent
  - Power Unit for Lighted Program Function Keypad Model MCXXX manufactured by CADAM INC<sup>2</sup>, or equivalent

- One of the following displays and associated adapter<sup>3</sup>:
  - IBM 8512 Color Display
  - IBM 8513 Color Display
  - IBM 8514 Color Display

- The following items are included in the Convenience Kit. If you wish to order the program package without these items, they are available from IBM on an RPQ basis.

- Lighted Program Function Keypad (AT or PS/2)
- Dual Async Card (AT only)
- Mouse Systems Mouse (AT or PS/2)
- External Five Volt Power Unit (PS/2 only)

#### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> If the Professional Graphics Adapter is used with the IBM Personal Computer AT Models 319 or 339 (8MHz Versions), the adapter must be at a level identified by part number 62X0914 on the adapter board. Older level adapters will not function correctly in an 8MHz Personal Computer AT.

<sup>2</sup> The mouse, lighted program-function keypad, and the keyboard interface board or power unit for the lighted program-function keypad (depending on the workstation hardware) are included with the MICRO CADAM Convenience Kit and are prerequisites to MICRO CADAM use.

<sup>3</sup> IBM Personal System/2 Display Adapter (#4050) is required with the IBM Personal System/2 Model 30.

#### Programming Requirements:

- IBM Personal Computer Disk Operating System Version 3.2 or 3.3
- Microsoft FORTRAN Compiler 3.31 and Microsoft LINKER 3.04 or PLINK86 (for Geometry Interface functions only).
- IBM PC 3270 Emulation Program or IBM Workstation Program is required for file transfer to host CADAM systems.

The licensed programs required to be installed on the IBM 43XX or 30XX host computer for file transfer are:

- For MVS/TSO--IBM 3270 PC File Transfer Program Release 1
- For VM/SP--IBM 3270 PC File Transfer Program Release 1

**Compatibility:** CADAM 2-1/2-dimensional models may be transferred between MICRO CADAM Release 1.2, PROFESSIONAL CADAM Release 1.2 and higher, and System/370-based systems running CADAM Release 19.2 or higher. These models can then be viewed and/or modified in either environment. Some model compatibility restrictions do apply.

**FCC Rules:** Hardware associated with the MICRO CADAM Products is subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and shall comply with all such applicable rules prior to delivery to customers.

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** To install the program, the customer is responsible for configuring the system with the necessary hardware to serve the application. The customer is also responsible for program setup and operation, implementation of backup procedures, and applicable problem determination procedures.

The hardware included in the convenience kit and the asset protection device must be installed by the customer.

**Packaging:** MICRO CADAM Cornerstone convenience kit contains the following materials:

- Program License Agreement
- License information
- 3.5 or 5.2-inch diskettes
- MICRO CADAM Systems User Guide
- MICRO CADAM Basic Self-Study Course
- MICRO CADAM Cornerstone Installation Guide
- Security block
- Mouse Systems mouse (AT or PS/2)

MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 program package is distributed with the following materials:

- Program License Agreement
- License information
- 3.5 or 5.2-inch diskettes
- Security block
- Software Security ROM for Data Transfer and Geometry Interface facilities (AT or PS/2)
- MICRO CADAM Systems User Guide
- MICRO CADAM Basic Self-Study Course
- MICRO CADAM Installation Guide
- MICRO CADAM Data Transfer User Guide
- MICRO CADAM Geometry Interface User Guide

The MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 convenience kit contains the above program package contents plus:

- Lighted Program Function Keypad (AT or PS/2)
- Dual Async Card (AT only)
- Mouse Systems Mouse (AT or PS/2)
- External Five Volt Power Unit (PS/2 only)

If the applicable security block or software security ROM is not installed with the above packages, the application will not function.

The mouse, lighted program function keypad, security devices, interface board, and lighted program-function keypad power unit are available separately from the manufacturer. However RQs will be accepted to order these items.

#### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

#### **Ordering Information**

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the availability date will be scheduled for shipment on December 24, 1987 for MICRO CADAM Rel 1.2 and MICRO CADAM Cornerstone.

To order the programs in this announcement, specify the program name, order type, quantity and media. The order types are:

- Program Package -- program diskettes with documentation
- Convenience Kit -- program diskettes with documentation and non-IBM hardware.

#### **Terms and Conditions**

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement. A copy of the agreement is included in the program package.

**Local Area Network Package Amendment Applies:** No.

**Limited Warranty:** Program Package - Yes. Media - Three months.

The following hardware items, included in the MICRO CADAM Cornerstone and MICRO CADAM Convenience Kits are not warranted by IBM. The manufacturers' warranty, if any, will apply. The manufacturers are, as follows:

- Lighted Program Function Keypad-- CADAM INC.
- Mouse/Keypad Interface Board-- CADAM INC.
- Asset Protection Chip and Security Block-- CADAM INC.
- Mouse-- Mouse Systems, Inc.

**Program Services:** Central service will be available during the first 90 days following the date of delivery to the customer by IBM. The statement of service included in the program package describes this service.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the terms and conditions of the Volume Procurement Amendment and the Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs. The programs in this announcement are included in the Eligible Program List for CAD/CAM Products. They may be added to the applicable category in the space provided on the Eligible Program List. The programs in this announcement are in Category D.

**Testing Period:** Not applicable.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

#### **Charges**

Program Name/Number	Order Type	One-Time Charge
MICRO CADAM Cornerstone (5713-ADH)	Convenience Kit	\$2,995
MICRO CADAM Release 1.2 (5713-ADJ)	Program Package	5,400
	Convenience Kit	6,495



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## Cooperative Software Program - Connex

Connex<sup>1</sup> Programs (5758-DDA, 5758 DDB) are designed to support major models of point-of-sale terminals, device concentrators and automated teller machines. The software provides interfaces to processor hosts for authorization and to various debit/credit networks for sharing and high-volume transaction switching.

Connex is a high availability transaction processing system for the System/370, designed for large volume electronic funds transfer (EFT) networking, authorization, and switching.

### Charges: (Individual Models)

Connex Foundation Switch (5758-DDA)	\$150,000
Connex Full Switch (5758-DDB)	185,000

Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987

<sup>1</sup> Connex is a trademark of Deluxe Data Systems, Inc.

## Marketing Information

For information and assistance concerning this program, contact:

Al Sisarsky  
ASD Vendor Programs  
Atlanta, Georgia  
(404) 956-4203  
T/L 527-4203  
VNET Node: ATLVM7  
USERID: SISARSKY

## Marketing Materials

Marketing materials and information are available by contacting the Consumer Transaction Systems (CTS) Application Support Center in Rockville, MD at T/L 791-5573; VNET - WSCVM, USERID - CTSASC. CTS must also be contacted prior to making a joint sales call with the vendor.

## Additional Information

For specific details relating to Marketing, Administrative, and Ordering Information, refer to Marketing Announcement 387-114, announced via HONE June 23, 1987.

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## Cooperative Software Program - Connex

**Connex<sup>1</sup> Programs (5758-DDA, 5758 DDB)** are designed to support major models of point-of-sale terminals, device concentrators and automated teller machines. The software provides interfaces to processor hosts for authorization and to various debit/credit networks for sharing and high-volume transaction switching.

Connex is a high availability transaction processing system for the System/370, designed for large volume electronic funds transfer (EFT) networking, authorization, and switching.

### Charges: (Individual Models)

Connex Foundation Switch (5758-DDA)	\$150,000
Connex Full Switch (5758-DDB)	185,000

**Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987**

<sup>1</sup> Connex is a trademark of Deluxe Data Systems, Inc.

### Highlights

- Multiserve architecture - allows multiple copies of processes (tasks) to be executed in parallel on a multiple CPU processor
- Parallel input/output - allows for critical I/O operations to split across processes that use separate files
- Message delivery system - provides a unique design that promotes throughput without loss of transaction integrity
- Mirrored disk files - permits automatic recovery of critical files and recovery from single I/O faults without system outages
- High efficiency - provides effective utilization of IBM hardware and software. Processor architecture and MVS/XA are exploited
- Performance tuning - provides critical application processes and message processing to be differentiated by adjusting processing priorities
- Fault-tolerant software - allows for automatic recovery of application software following failures
- On-line changes - allows for most configuration changes to be effected without system outages
- Full use of SNA facilities -- line configurations for terminals and interfaces can be designed for cost effectiveness and efficiency.

### Description

Connex Programs are available under the terms and conditions of the marketing agreement for Cooperative Software Programs from Deluxe Data Systems, Inc. Deluxe Data Systems, Inc. describes the programs as follows:

Connex is a set of VTAM application programs designed specifically for the electronic funds transfer (EFT) environment to operate as a terminal driver and as a switch for routing financial transactions. The program includes: Network Control Facilities, Routing File Maintenance, Logging, PIN Security, terminal driving modules, links, a settlement interface and General File Management.

**Connex Foundation Switch:** The Connex Foundation Switch provides terminal driving for a supported ATM or point-of-sale terminal with a standard interface to a host authorization system. A comprehensive set of transactions are supported up to 500,000 per month without additional license fees.

**Connex Full Switch:** The Connex Full Switch provides the ability to connect many hosts using a common standard interface. The hosts may be either issuers (authorizers), acquirers (terminal drivers), or both. A comprehensive set of transactions are supported up to 500,000 per month without additional license fees. In addition, stand-in authorization may be made available as desired for any or all of the hosts and their card bases.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Processors:** IBM System/370

**Architecture Devices:** 43XX or 30XX CPUs

**Memory:** Sufficient memory is required to run MVS/XA

**Storage Devices:** IBM System/370 supported storage devices

**Printers:** IBM System/370 supported printers

**Terminals:** IBM System/370 supported terminals

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

**Operating System: MVS/XA Software Dependencies:**

- MVS/XA (Version 2 Release 1.3)
- JES2 (Version 2 Release 2.3) or JES3 (Version 2 Release 1.5)
- ACT/VTAM (Version 3 Release 1)
- DFP (Version 2 Release 1)
- DF/DSS (Version 2 Release 1)
- TSO/E (Version 3.0)
- ACF/NCP (Version 3 Release 1)
- ISPF (Version 2 Release 2)
- OS/VS COBOL (Version 2 Release 4)
- ASSEMBLER H (Version 2 Release 1)
- SORT (Any IBM compatible sort)

Program Name	Type/ Model Number	Feature Number	Price
Connex Foundation Switch	5758-DDA	9080	\$150,000
Connex Full Switch	5758-DOB	9080	185,000

**Terms and Conditions**

**Prices:** The prices listed for Cooperative Software Programs are for reference only and are as provided from the program supplier's current price list. Current prices and quantity discounts, if any, can only be obtained from the program supplier's marketing package. Program charges are subject to change without notice.

**Program Validation:** The features and functions of Cooperative Software Programs have only been validated through a random telephone survey of the program supplier's installed customers.

**Technical Assistance:** Technical assistance, installation and usage support are as provided by the program supplier. The program supplier and/or the customer may be responsible for installation depending upon the agreement between them.

**Licensing:** The Cooperative Software Programs are available from IBM as distributed by the program supplier. The terms and conditions are provided by the program supplier. IBM makes no warranties, express or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Address any questions pertaining to warranty coverage to the program supplier.

**Warranted:** Not warranted by IBM. Warranty, if any, is as provided by the program supplier.

**Quantity Discount:** IBM Quantity Discount Agreements are not applicable to Cooperative Software Programs. Quantity discounts, if any, are as provided by the program supplier.

**Educational Allowance:** IBM Educational Allowances are not applicable to Cooperative Software Programs. Allowances, if any, are as provided by the program supplier.

**Test Period:** The test period, if any, is as provided by the program supplier. No test periods should be entered into IBM administrative systems.

**Charges**

**Note:** The charges listed below are the program supplier's current list prices for a base system. Typical configurations may vary due to various device and network interfaces and transaction volumes.





# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 Availability

The IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 is an emulation licensed program for twinax attachment of the IBM Personal System/2™ as a workstation to the System/36 and the System/38. This licensed program supports the IBM Personal System/2 Models 50, 60, and 80. The System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 offers enhanced functions, including new graphics support for the System/38, beyond that established by the IBM Enhanced 5250 Emulation Programs (for IBM personal computer users).

The IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0, is offered in an installation convenience kit containing the necessary hardware and licensed program.

Reference: Programming Announcement 287-094, dated April 2, 1987

### Charges:

Program Number	One-Time Charge
69X6287	\$845
69X6286	160

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

69X6287	IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Installation Convenience Kit/A, Version 1.0
69X6286	IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0

### Sponsoring Executive

M. H. Forster  
Group Director  
Mid-Range Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 1, 1987

## IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 Availability

The IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 is an emulation licensed program for twinax attachment of the IBM Personal System/2™ as a workstation to the System/36 and the System/38. This licensed program supports the IBM Personal System/2 Models 50, 60, and 80. The System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 offers enhanced functions, including new graphics support for the System/38, beyond that established by the IBM Enhanced 5250 Emulation Programs (for IBM personal computer users).

The IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0, is offered in an installation convenience kit containing the necessary hardware and licensed program.

Reference: Programming Announcement 287-094, dated April 2, 1987

### Charges:

Program Number	One-Time Charge
69X6287	\$845
69X6286	160

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

69X6287	IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Installation Convenience Kit/A, Version 1.0
69X6286	IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Compatibility:** In addition to the programs listed in Programming Announcement 287-094, dated April 2, 1987, the System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 is also compatible with the following programs:

### Description

### Release

DisplayWrite 4	1.0
Lotus 1-2-3 <sup>1</sup>	2.01
Writing Assistant	2.0
DCA/TCA 3270 Emulation Adapter	
Communications Combo Adapter	
Dual Asynch Adapter	

<sup>1</sup> Registered trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.

### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** In addition to customer responsibilities announced April 2, 1987, the following applies.

Prior to installation of the System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, the customer's service coordinator should contact the IBM Support Center to request the preventive service planning information for this program.

### Terms and Conditions

With the exception of the following, all the terms and conditions announced April 2, 1987, remain in effect.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until December 31, 1990. The statement of service included with the program describes this service.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms Specify Option

A specify option is provided for the IBM System/88 Operating System, 5732-001, that permits Data Encryption Algorithms currently imbedded in the operating system to be separately specified and shipped.

**Planned Availability Date:** December 18, 1987

**5732-001 IBM System/88 Operating System Data  
Encryption Algorithms, feature  
number 7080**

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives must alter on-order System/88 Operating System orders scheduled for shipment after December 18, 1987, to reflect feature number 7080 as directed by customers who require Data Encryption Algorithms.

Marketing representatives must survey customer-installed System/88s to determine if customers require any future update to Data Encryption Algorithms, and initiate an RPO MES for those customers to add the specify option feature number 7080.

Marketing representatives must update outstanding proposals and bids to add feature number 7080, if customers require Data Encryption support.

### Administrative Information

Records-purposes-only MES must be processed to add feature number 7080 for customers requiring any future updates to Data Encryption Algorithms.

### Ordering Information

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, has been updated to provide for inputting specify option to order Data Encryption Algorithms. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

### Sponsoring Executive

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director  
Large Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms Specify Option

A specify option is provided for the IBM System/88 Operating System, 5732-001, that permits Data Encryption Algorithms currently imbedded in the operating system to be separately specified and shipped.

**Planned Availability Date:** December 18, 1987

**5732-001 IBM System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms, feature number 7080**

### Description

A customer option is provided for specifying whether Data Encryption Algorithms are required.

### Publications

System/88 Operating System, 5732-001, Data Encryption Algorithm option, feature number 7080, publications information is included as part of the System Update Bulletin provided with the System/88 Operating System shipment.

### Schedule

Availability is planned for December 18, 1987.

### Technical Information

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** Beginning with Release 3.2, new customers installing their initial system and who have not ordered feature number 7080 will receive their software already installed on the system DASD. However, Data Encryption Algorithms will not be shipped to these customers.

If feature number 7080 is ordered, the Data Encryption Algorithms will be shipped already installed on the system DASD.

All current customers will automatically be sent a Release 3.2 maintenance tape that includes feature number 7080. Customers who require this feature must install the Data Encryption Algorithms software and re-bind those user applications that use the Data Encryption Algorithms. Also, these customers should order feature number 7080 in order to receive subsequent updates, as in Release 4, and to be properly registered

as a user. If the customer fails to register as a user of feature number 7080, new Release 4 installation tools will automatically delete Data Encryption Algorithms software from the customer's system when Release 4 is installed.

**Installability:** Conversion considerations are not affected by this announcement.

**Packaging:** The Data Encryption Algorithms software is shipped on a 9-track 1600 bpi tape. However, new customers installing their initial system will receive feature number 7080 (if ordered) already installed on the system DASD.

### Security, Auditability, and Control

While some basic functions for encryption are provided, it is the user's responsibility to determine how and when to use these encryption functions. This product has the same exposures that are inherent in any software encryption in which the user has the responsibility to protect against unauthorized usage.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

### Ordering Information

**New Licensees:** Orders for new licenses of the System/88 Operating System, 5732-001, must specify feature number 7080 if Data Encryption support is required.

Shipments of the System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms will begin on December 18, 1987.

New users of System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms should specify:

Type	Model	Feature
5732	001	7080

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number 9080 for the distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
9080	9/1600 bpi tape

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

**Unlicensed Documentation:** System/88 Operating System publications included with the basic machine-readable material are not affected by this announcement.

**Terms and Conditions**

System/88 Operating System terms and conditions are not affected by this specify option announcement. See IBM Programming Announcement 287-525, dated November 17, 1987.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 31, 1988, IBM will withdraw from marketing the following programs licensed under the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs:

Program Number	Program Name
5798-DZD	Videotex/370 Version 2
5798-DZE	Videotex/370 Service Aid

### Marketing Information

Orders for a withdrawn program will not be accepted via normal ordering procedures after the effective date of withdrawal. Orders after that date may be submitted in accordance with the procedures under the Withdrawal of Licensed Programs section in the General Information section of the ISG Sales Manual.

Customers with a withdrawn program installed who desire to obtain another license for the program to run on an additional processor may accomplish this in accordance with the procedures under the Additional Identical Licenses section in the Software section of the Branch Office Manual.

### Marketing Action Required

Customers with any of the withdrawn programs on order must be notified. In addition, outstanding proposals must be updated.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM will withdraw from marketing the following programs licensed under IBM Program License Agreement:

Part Number	Feature Number	Program Name
6317012	9376	PC/Videotex-Graphic Artist Facility (VTXGRAF)
6410982	9226	PC/COLORVIEW
6476071	6071	PC/VTXACCESS

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Action Required

On order customers will be sent the attached Notice to IBM Customers. Marketing representatives must contact these customers immediately and alter existing orders as directed by the customer. Outstanding bids and proposals must also be updated.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

**On Order Customers:** Customers who have the withdrawn programs on order must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 calendar days of this announcement.

A Customer Notification Control List of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the notice are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**VPA/QDA Customers:** Within 10 calendar days after this announcement, the attached Notice to IBM Customers must be sent by the branch office to all customers with a VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs, VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals, Quantity Discount Agreement

(QDA) Personal Computer Licensed Programs Exhibit, or special bid in effect.

This customer notification must be documented with a locally initiated control listing documenting the mailing date, or, if hand delivered, the date and name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered. File this control list locally for future reference to substantiate proof of customer notification.

**Additional Copies:** Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 287-549-1A Notice to IBM Customers -- IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, IBM will withdraw from marketing the following licensed programs:

Part Number	Feature Number	Program Name
6317012	9376	PC/Videotex-Graphic Artist Facility (VTXGRAF)
6410982	9226	PC/COLORVIEW
6476071	6071	PC/VTXACCESS

The withdrawn programs will be removed from the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs, the VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals, and the Quantity Discount Agreement (QDA) Personal Computer Licensed Programs Exhibit on the effective date of withdrawal.

Since IBM's supply of these licensed programs is limited, there are ordering limitations that may apply to orders, including those from customers with VPAs, QDAs, or special bids in effect. Existing orders will be filled if shipment is scheduled between the date of this Notice and April 15, 1988, which is one month following the date of withdrawal. New orders placed after the date of this Notice, but before the date of withdrawal, will be filled on an as-available basis if the requested delivery date is between the date of this Notice and one month following the date of withdrawal. Orders placed after the withdrawal date will not be filled. Requests for deferrals of orders beyond one month following the date of withdrawal will result in the cancellation of the order.

If you have questions regarding this notification, please contact your IBM marketing representative.





# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 8, 1987

## IBM Licensed Programs Withdrawal from Marketing and Discontinuance of Program Services

Effective April 1, 1988, IBM will withdraw from marketing the following programs licensed under the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs. In addition, effective June 30, 1988, program services will also be discontinued.

Program Number	Program Name
5740-XC3	CIPREC OS/VS
5746-XC3	CIPREC DOS/VS

### Marketing Information

The withdrawal from marketing will be effective April 1, 1988.

Orders for a withdrawn program will not be accepted via normal ordering procedures after the effective date of withdrawal. Orders after that date may be submitted in accordance with the procedures under the Withdrawal of Licensed Programs section in the General Information section of the ISG Sales Manual.

Customers with a withdrawn program installed who desire to obtain another license for the program to run on an additional processor may accomplish this in accordance with the procedures under the Additional Identical Licenses section in the Software section of the Branch Office Manual.

**Program Services Discontinuance:** Central Service and Local Assistance will be discontinued effective June 30, 1988.

APARs will be accepted up to the date of discontinuance of program services. At IBM's discretion, a final release may be sent to users of record that incorporates corrections for valid APARs received up to the date of discontinuance.

APARs may be submitted, however, after the date of discontinuance under the following conditions:

1. The APARs address problems resulting from software service changes made in the latest release of the program.
2. Submission must be within 90 days of the availability of the PTF or last release of the program from IBM Software Distribution.
3. These APARs will be handled in accordance with the program services provided prior to the date of the program services discontinuance.

### Marketing Action Required

Customers with any of the affected licensed programs on order must be notified. In addition, outstanding proposals must be updated.

### Administrative Information

As of the date of this announcement, current licensees of the affected programs will receive notification of the program services discontinuance directly from IBM Software Distribution.

For programs licensed after the date of this announcement but before the effective date of discontinuance, the discontinuance of program services and its effective date, in addition to the currently applicable program services, must be shown on the Supplement to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

GSA customers are subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable GSA Federal Supply Contracts. Refer questions to the National Federal Marketing, Federal Schedule Contracts, Bethesda, MD, (301) 564-2027 or T/L 238-2027.

### Request for Price Quotation

Effective today, no new PRPQs will be accepted for programs in this announcement.

### Sponsoring Executive

D. R. LeGrande  
General Manager  
Industrial Sector



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 Available

Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 is announced with support for the VM/System Product High Performance Option (VM/SP HPO) Release 5 and communicates with VM Inter-System Facilities Release 1 running with VM/SP HPO Release 4.2. In addition to the functions provided in VM Inter-System Facilities Release 1, Release 2 takes advantage of the SPOOL File Limit Relief provided by VM/SP HPO Release 5, plus enhances coupling support for up to four processors in a VM/SP HPO complex.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-242, dated June 11, 1987

### Charges:

Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge Basic	Monthly License Charge Basic
	-----	\$2,100
30	\$63,000	-----
40	100,800	-----

Availability Date: December 18, 1987

5664-376 Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities

### Sponsoring Executive

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 Available

Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 is announced with support for the VM/System Product High Performance Option (VM/SP HPO) Release 5 and communicates with VM Inter-System Facilities Release 1 running with VM/SP HPO Release 4.2. In addition to the functions provided in VM Inter-System Facilities Release 1, Release 2 takes advantage of the SPOOL File Limit Relief provided by VM/SP HPO Release 5, plus enhances coupling support for up to four processors in a VM/SP HPO complex.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-242, dated June 11, 1987

### Charges:

Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge Basic	Monthly License Charge Basic
	-----	\$2,100
30	\$63,000	-----
40	100,800	-----

Availability Date: December 18, 1987

5664-376 Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Prerequisites:** The preparation package APAR (#VM28927) for use with VM Inter-System Facilities Release 2 and VM/SP HPO Release 5 coupled complexes will be available on Program Update Tape (PUT) #8708. The APAR (#VM29752) for the no-charge PRPQ to VM/Pass-Through Facility Release 3 will be availability on PUT #8801.

### Ordering Information

#### Current Licensees

Current licensees of VM Inter-System Facilities must order this release via MES. Ordering instructions are scheduled to be mailed from IBM Software Distribution to all current licensees by January 1, 1988.

### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the Planned Availability Date will be scheduled for shipment December 24, 1987. Orders entered after the Availability Date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of VM Inter-System Facilities should specify:

Type: 5664. Model: 376.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4628 for a Monthly License Charge (MLC), or for a Graduated One-Time Charge (OTC) specify one of the following feature numbers as applicable and corresponding to the Processor Group that contains the designated machine. Also, specify the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

Processor Group	Basic OTC Feature Number
30	1283
40	1284

Note: The Processor Group can be determined by referring to either the Exhibit for IBM Machines (Z125-3901) or the Exhibit for Non-IBM Machines (Z125-3902) that are associated with the Graduated Charges Amendment to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs (Z125-3900).

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and either feature number 9628 for a Monthly License Charge (MLC) or one of the following feature numbers for a Graduated One-Time Charge (OTC) that corresponds to the Processor Group containing the designated machine:

Processor Group	DSLO OTC Feature Number
30	1287
40	1288

For DSLO Graduated One-Time Charge, specify feature number 9901 for asset registration.

Ordering the DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic licensee. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium:

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
5890	1600 magnetic tape*
5891	6250 magnetic tape*
5892	3480 tape cartridge*

\* Contains Restricted Materials of IBM

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material:

Title	Order Number	Price
VM/Inter-System Facilities Licensed Program Specifications	GC23-0412	\$ .20
VM/Inter-System Facilities Planning and Installation	SC23-0399	8.35
VM/Inter-System Facilities General Information	GC23-0411	5.95
VM/Inter-System Facilities Operation and Use	SC23-0400	14.00

Additional copies will be available for a fee from Mechanicsburg by December 18, 1987. For ordering instructions see the Publications section in IBM Programming Announcement 287-242, dated June 11, 1987.

**Licensed Documentation:** The following licensed material and microfiche will be available from IBM Software Distribution by December 18, 1987. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

The first copy is available at no charge to licensees of basic material. Use the 8XXX feature number to order additional copies for a fee.

Title	Order Number	Additional Copies Feature Number
VM/Inter-System Facilities Diagnosis Reference*	LY27-8057	8366
VM/Inter-System Facilities Listing*	LYC7-0328	8290

\* Contains Restricted Materials of IBM

Customers registered for licensed material will receive all updates automatically.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 Availability with Additional Function

Running as a CICS/VS application, IBM Distributed Office Support System/370 (DISOSS/370) provides a broad spectrum of distribution and library services, application processing, and device attachment support as a base for implementing office tasks. DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 is enhanced to use 31-bit addressing in the MVS/XA environment, and supports document printing on such advanced-function printers as the IBM 3800 Models 3 and 6, IBM 3820, IBM 3812, and the IBM 4224.

Other DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 functional and usability enhancement include user exits and the ability to specify a mailroom printer. DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 operates under the control of MVS/370, MVS/XA, or VSE, and CICS/VS.

With DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4, documents that contain image and graphics data may be printed on advanced-function printers using the Image and Graphics feature of IBM DisplayWrite/370 Release 2 (available in March 1988 for the MVS/XA environment only), and additional control codes may be transformed from RFTDCA to FFTDCA and IBM 1403 formats.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-271, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

Program Number	Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge	Initial License Charge	Monthly License Charge
5666-270	--	--	\$ 1,710	\$ 627
5665-290	--	--	4,570	1,630
	20	\$ 52,705		
	30	52,705		
	40	84,330		

Planned availability Date: December 18, 1987.

5666-270	DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 (VSE)
5665-290	DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 (MVS/370 and MVS/XA)

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

### Product Positioning

DISOSS/370 should be attractive to those customers who want to implement office applications in MVS and VSE environments, particularly those with CICS/VS installed. DISOSS/370 may be used with Personal Services/CICS, Personal Services/PC, Personal Services/TSO, and other office products, such as System/36, System/38, and the Professional Office System (PROFS)/VM™

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

### Marketing Strategy

DISOSS/370, in conjunction with the Personal Services products, should be marketed to all accounts that require electronic mail and central filing capabilities in the MVS and VSE environments. These capabilities may be extended to VM PROFS users by using the PROFS/DISOSS bridge.

### Marketing Action Required

Update outstanding proposals for DISOSS/370 customers as appropriate, to reflect the new features and functions of this release.

### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS XXXX-XXX" (XXXX-XXX = Type/Model) at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

Marketing assistance will be provided by the Office/Mid-Range National Marketing Center in Irving, Texas.

**Demonstrations:** Demonstration capability is available through the IBM Customer Centers.

### Education Support

Refer to the Catalog of IBM Education (G320-1255) for the DISOSS/370 courses that are part of the MVS and VSE Office Education series taught at the Dallas Technical Education Center.

Call IBM Direct-Education at 800-426-2468 for schedule and enrollment information.

## **Installation Information**

### **Installation Support**

Installation and technical support is provided by National Technical Support -- Dallas National Marketing and Technical Support Center in Irving, Texas.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialist for technical marketing assistance. System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSystem and HONE EQUAL. System engineers should research their questions in INFOSystem using the search word "DISOSS", with branch specialists, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

Installation and technical support provided through HONE EQUAL for DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 3 is withdrawn. Questions submitted to EQUAL will be accepted until December 18, 1988. The existing INFOSYS database of Qs & As will continue to be available for query of installation and usage information.

**Direct Customer Support:** Eligible customers may obtain installation and usage assistance from the Mid-range System/370 Technical Support Center through ASKINFO. To obtain information on customer eligibility and registration procedures, refer to HONE SUPPORTINFO using the search words '4300 customer direct eligibility.'

See the Performance Considerations section of the Sales Manual for DISOSS/370 performance information.

### **Administrative Information**

#### **Ordering Information**

These programs have a complex ordering structure and every order must be configured through the HONE aid, CFPROGS. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, should be used to transmit the ordering information to AAS.

**Processor Group-To-Processor Group Upgrades:** Programs in this announcement are eligible for processor group upgrades (e.g., Group 20 to Group 40) when notification is received that the customer has changed the processor (designated machine) on which the licensed program is running. For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. DVG33.

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** DISOSS/370 for MVS/370 and MVS/XA (5665-290) is available under the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA). For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

#### **Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

P. D. Dance  
Group Director, Software Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 Availability with Additional Function

Running as a CICS/VS application, IBM Distributed Office Support System/370 (DISOSS/370) provides a broad spectrum of distribution and library services, application processing, and device attachment support as a base for implementing office tasks. DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 is enhanced to use 31-bit addressing in the MVS/XA environment, and supports document printing on such advanced-function printers as the IBM 3800 Models 3 and 6, IBM 3820, IBM 3812, and the IBM 4224.

Other DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 functional and usability enhancement include user exits and the ability to specify a mailroom printer. DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 operates under the control of MVS/370, MVS/XA, or VSE, and CICS/VS.

With DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4, documents that contain image and graphics data may be printed on advanced-function printers using the Image and Graphics feature of IBM DisplayWrite/370 Release 2 (available in March 1988 for the MVS/XA environment only), and additional control codes may be transformed from RFTDCA to FDTDCA and IBM 1403 formats.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-271, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

Program Number	Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge	Initial License Charge	Monthly License Charge
5666-270	--	--	\$ 1,710	\$ 627
5665-290	--	--	4,570	1,630
	20	\$ 52,705		
	30	52,705		
	40	84,330		

Planned availability Date: December 18, 1987.

5666-270	DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 (VSE)
5665-290	DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 (MVS/370 and MVS/XA)

### Highlights

- 31-bit addressing exploited in MVS/XA environment
- Advanced-function printer support
- Migration of IBM Scanmaster I image documents to Revisable Form Text Document Content Architecture (RFTDCA) format
- User exits
- Library maintenance enhancements
- Ability to specify a mailroom printer.

### Description

The following is new DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 enhancement information. For additional DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 enhancement information, refer to IBM Programming Announcement 287-271, dated June 16, 1987.

### Advanced-Function Printer Support

In addition to previously announced text printing capabilities, DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 now supports the printing on advanced-function printers of documents that contain image and graphics data. This support, which is available only in the MVS/XA environment, uses the Image and Graphics feature of DisplayWrite/370 Release 2 which will be available in March 1988. Composite documents, which are documents that contain text with imbedded images/graphics data, may be printed on host-attached, advanced-function printers, such as the 3800 Models 3 and 6, and the 3820. These document types may also be printed on any direct-attached, advanced-function printer supported by DisplayWrite/370 and Graphical Data Display Manager (GDDM); for example, the 3812 and the 4224.

Composite documents may be printed on IBM 1403-compatible system printers. Document sections that contain non-text information will be replaced by "white space."

See A Guide to IBM's Advanced Function Printing (S544-3095) for an introduction to advanced-function printing. For more DisplayWrite/370 Release 2 Image and Graphics feature information, refer to IBM Programming Announcement 287-466, dated October 20, 1987.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

## Scanmaster I Migration

DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 provides a new datastream transformation that allows Scanmaster I documents to be converted to a format that is consistent with the IBM 3117/3118 Image Scanners. These documents may be printed on advanced-function printers in the MVS/XA environment by using the DisplayWrite/370 Release 2 Image and Graphics feature and GDDM Version 2 Release 1.1, and may be viewed in MVS/XA on terminals with graphics support.

### RFTDCA Transform Enhancement

The DISOSS/370 transform function is enhanced to support transforming the following additional control codes from RFTDCA to FTDCA and 1403-compatible formats:

- Emphasis
- Formatted text
- Character replacement table
- Roman numeral page numbers
- Skip lines
- Print current date
- Document name within margin text

Print support for 1403 begin-and-end emphasis is also provided.

### Ordering Information

#### Current Licensees

Current licensees of DISOSS/370 will automatically receive this update from IBM Software Distribution. This shipment of DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 is scheduled to be completed by January 1, 1988.

#### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date should be scheduled for shipment December 25, 1987. Orders entered after the availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of DISOSS/370 MVS/370 or MVS/XA Version 3 Release 4 should specify:

Type: 5665. Model: 290.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 2122 for an initial license charge and feature number 4522 for a monthly license charge. For a graduated one-time charge, specify one of the following feature numbers, as applicable and corresponding to the processor group that contains the designated machine. Also, specify the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

Processor Group	Basic One-Time Charge Feature Number
20	0222
30	0223
40	0224

Note: The processor group may be determined by referring to either the Exhibit for IBM Machines (Z125-3901) or the Exhibit for Non-IBM Machines (Z125-3902) that are associated with the Graduated

Charges Amendment to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs (Z125-3900).

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and feature number 2322 for an initial license charge and feature number 9522 for a monthly license charge, or one of the following feature numbers for a graduated one-time charge that corresponds to the processor group containing the designated machine.

Processor Group	DSLO One-Time Charge Feature Number
20	0226
30	0227
40	0228

For DSLO graduated one-time charge, specify feature number 9901 for asset registration.

Ordering a DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic licensee. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Environment	Feature Number	Distribution Medium
MVS	5059	9/1600 Magnetic Tape
MVS	5060	9/6250 Magnetic Tape
MVS	5862	3480 Tape Cartridge

New users of DISOSS/370 VSE should specify:

Type: 5666. Model: 270.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 2110 for an initial license charge and feature number 4523 for a monthly license charge. Also, specify the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and feature number 2310 for an initial license charge and feature number 9523 for the monthly license charge.

Ordering a DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic licensee. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Environment	Feature Number	Distribution Medium
VSE	5156	9/1600 Magnetic Tape
VSE	5157	9/6250 Magnetic Tape
VSE	5595	3480 Tape Cartridge

Note: Feature numbers 5043 and 5044 which were available with DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 3 are withdrawn, effective with DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 availability.



**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material.

Title	Order Number
DISOSS/370 Licensed Program Specifications	GC30-9581
DISOSS/370 Installation (VSE)	SC30-3232
DISOSS/370 Installation (MVS)	SC30-3090
DISOSS/370 Host Utilities Reference	SC30-3428
DISOSS/370 Messages	SC30-3094
DISOSS/370 Customization	SC30-3444
DISOSS/370 Planning	SC30-3093
DISOSS/370 Administration	SC30-3091
DISOSS/370 Concepts	GC30-3434
DISOSS/370 Interchange Architecture Reference	SC30-3276
DISOSS/370 Application Programming	SC30-3096
DISOSS/370 Bibliography and Master Index	SC30-3277
Introducing DISOSS/370	GC30-3433
DISOSS/370 Capacity Planning and Tuning	SC30-3392

The DISOSS/370 Capacity Planning and Tuning publication (SC30-3392) will not be available until April 1988. Current licensees will automatically receive this publication.

Additional copies of the above publications will be available for a fee. To order, contact your IBM representative.

The first copy of the following publications will be supplied at no charge to licensees of the basic material who request them from IBM Software Distribution. Specify the appropriate 7XXX feature number when requesting these publications. Additional copies may be ordered, for a fee, by using the appropriate order number. To order contact your IBM representative.

Title	Order Number	Feature Number
DISOSS/370 Scanmaster I User's Guide	SC30-3095	7041
Scanmaster DISOSS/370 Keypad Template	SX27-3543	7042
Scanmaster I DISOSS/370 Direction	SX27-3544	7043

**Licensed Documentation:** The following licensed material will be supplied with the basic machine-readable material.

The first copy is available at no charge to licensees of basic material. Use the 8XXX feature number to order additional copies for a fee. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

Title	Order Number	Feature Number
DISOSS/370 Diagnosis (VSE)	LY30-5590	8179
DISOSS/370 Diagnosis (MVS, MVS/XA)	LY30-5590	8532

Customers registered for licensed material will receive all updates automatically.

## Terms and Conditions

See IBM Programming Announcement 287-271, dated June 16, 1987, for DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 Terms and Conditions.

## Charges

Program Number	Basic Initial License Charge	Basic Monthly License Charge	DSLO Initial License Charge	DSLO Monthly License Charge
5665-290	\$4,570	\$1,630	\$3,425	\$1,220
5666-270	1,710	627	1,275	467
Program Number	Processor Group	Basic Graduated One-Time Charge	DSLO Graduated One-Time Charge	
5665-290	20	\$ 52,705	\$ 39,450	
	30	52,705	39,450	
	40	84,330	63,125	

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated, one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.

**Graduated Charges:** The applicable graduated one-time charge will be based upon the processor group of the designated machine on which the licensed program is licensed for use. The charge for processor group upgrades will be the difference in the current charges between the two groups. Licenses for which the customer has paid a graduated one-time charge may be redesignated to a processor in the same processor group or a lower processor group. There will be no adjustment or refund for processor group downgrades.

## Local Program Support Charges

	5665-290	5666-270
Monthly Licensed Program Support Charge:	\$ 223	\$ 176
Monthly Multiple Licensed Program Support Charge:	357	282



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Inter-System Control Facility/PC Available

Inter-System Control Facility/PC allows target system initialization to be automated by the controlling host system running NetView™ with the corequisite Inter-System Control Facility program offering. It also provides the ability to control Inter-System Control Facility/PC-supported target systems for functions such as Initial Microcode Load (warmstart), Initial Program Load, time-of-day setting, and operating system initialization from the controlling system.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-264, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge: \$1,500

6476174 (Formerly 5601-113)

### Marketing Information

The following operating systems executing on target systems are supported:

- MVS/SP JES2 Version 1 Release 3.6
- MVS/SP JES2 Version 2 Release 1.5
- MVS/SP JES2 Version 2 Release 2.0
- MVS/SP JES3 Version 2 Release 2.1
- VM/SP Release 4
- VM/SP HPO Release 4.2
- VM/SP Release 5
- VM/SP HPO Release 5
- VM/XA

The following target IBM Processors are supported:

- 3090 Models 120E, 150, 150E, 180, 180E, 200, 200E, 300E, 400, 400E, 600E
- 308X All announced models
- 4381 All announced models
- 4341 All announced models

Inter-System Control Facility/PC operates on the following IBM Personal Computers:

- IBM Personal Computer XT 5160
- IBM Personal Computer XT 5162 (Model 286)
- IBM Personal Computer AT® 5170
- IBM Industrial Computer 5531

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

The minimum configuration is, as follows:

- 256Kb of memory
- One 5-1/4-inch diskette drive
- One monochrome monitor or color display and keyboard
- One emulator card for the target operating system console
- One emulator card for the target hardware system console
- One emulator card for Inter-System Control Facility communications

The emulator cards are the Advanced IBM PC 3278/79 Emulation Adapter (feature number 5050, part number 83X9670, up to four allowed).

### Administrative Information

#### Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the general availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 31, 1987.

To order, enter the appropriate order type number and feature numbers. Multiple features and any quantity of the feature may be entered per order type.

**Program Package:** Program diskette with documentation.

Order type Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Media
5875-XXX	8174	Inter-System Control Facility/ PC	5-1/4-inch Diskette

### Sponsoring Executive

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Inter-System Control Facility/PC Available

Inter-System Control Facility/PC allows target system initialization to be automated by the controlling host system running NetView™ with the corequisite Inter-System Control Facility program offering. It also provides the ability to control Inter-System Control Facility/PC-supported target systems for functions such as Initial Microcode Load (warmstart), Initial Program Load, time-of-day setting, and operating system initialization from the controlling system.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-264, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge: \$1,500

6476174 (Formerly 5601-113)

### Description

The following operating systems executing on target systems are supported:

- MVS/SP JES2 Version 1 Release 3.6
- MVS/SP JES2 Version 2 Release 1.5
- MVS/SP JES2 Version 2 Release 2.0
- MVS/SP JES3 Version 2 Release 2.1
- VM/SP Release 4
- VM/SP HPO Release 4.2
- VM/SP Release 5
- VM/SP HPO Release 5
- VM/XA

The following target IBM Processors are supported:

- 3090 Models 120E, 150, 150E, 180, 180E, 200, 200E, 300E, 400, 400E, 600E
- 308X All announced models
- 4381 All announced models
- 4341 All announced models

Inter-System Control Facility/PC operates on the following IBM Personal Computers:

- IBM Personal Computer XT 5160
- IBM Personal Computer XT 5162 (Model 286)
- IBM Personal Computer AT® 5170
- IBM Industrial Computer 5531

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

The minimum configuration is, as follows:

- 256Kb of memory
- One 5 1/4-inch diskette drive
- One monochrome monitor or color display and keyboard
- One emulator card for the target operating system console
- One emulator card for the target hardware system console
- One emulator card for Inter-System Control Facility communications

The emulator cards are the Advanced IBM PC 3278/79 Emulation Adapter (feature number 5050, part number 83X9670, up to four allowed).

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Programming Requirements:** IBM DOS Version 3.1, 3.2, or 3.3

**Language:** Object code only

#### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** This program is licensed under the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement. A copy of the agreement is included in the program package.

**Educational Allowance:** A 20% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Limited Warranty Program:** Yes; Media: Three months.

**Volume Discount:** Not applicable.

**Central Service:** Central Service through the IBM Support Center will be available until December 31, 1989. The statement of service included in the program package describes the service.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

### Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the general availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 31, 1987.

To order, enter the appropriate order type number and feature numbers. Multiple features and any quantity of the feature may be entered per order type.

**Program Package:** Program diskette with documentation.

Order type Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Media
5875-XXX	8174	Inter-System Control Facility/ PC	5-1/4-inch Diskette

### Documentation:

- Inter-System Control Facilities Planning and Installation Guide (SC30-3472)
- Inter-System Control Facilities Operation Guide (SC30-3473).



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Inter-System Control Facility for MVS/XA and MVS/370 Availability

IBM Inter-System Control Facility runs as a NetView™ application. With the Inter-System Control Facility/Personal Computer Program Offering, it extends NetView system operations support to control and monitor multiple-automation target systems from a centralized controlling system. These program offerings provide a communications interface between NetView operation and automation facilities at a centralized controlling system and the operating system console, and the hardware system console at a supported, target system. Multiple Inter-System Control Facility/PC stations and their attached target systems are supported. Communications with an IBM Personal Computer is through ACF/VTAM support of a channel or telecommunications-connected IBM 3174 or 3274 Controller.

NetView operators at the automation focal point can monitor and control the target operating system and hardware system consoles to perform such activities as remote Initial Microcode Load (warmstart), Initial Program Load (IPL), time-of-day clock setting, and system initialization. Remote power-on is not supported. This program provides access to NetView's enhanced operational facilities through which support for automating target system operations, such as system initialization procedures, may be developed.

Inter-System Control Facility target system support complements NetView by providing facilities for a single focal point to manage local and remote systems; subsystems, such as JES2, JES3, CICS, and IMS; and communications networks. It is recommended that support for operating system consoles be used mainly for target system initialization. Then, NetView or the Network Communication Control Facility (NCCF) may be started in the target system, and a cross-domain session established with the centralized NetView. Target operating system console support may be moved to this connection. NetView or NCCF in the target system may be used for automation at the target system which allows off-loading of this function from the centralized controlling system.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-263, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge:    Basic License - \$7,000  
                             DSLO License - 5,250

Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5798-RXC    Inter-System Control Facility for  
                             MVS/XA and MVS/370

### Sponsoring Executive

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Inter-System Control Facility for MVS/XA and MVS/370 Availability

IBM Inter-System Control Facility runs as a NetView™ application. With the Inter-System Control Facility/Personal Computer Program Offering, it extends NetView system operations support to control and monitor multiple-automation target systems from a centralized controlling system. These program offerings provide a communications interface between NetView operation and automation facilities at a centralized controlling system and the operating system console, and the hardware system console at a supported, target system. Multiple Inter-System Control Facility/PC stations and their attached target systems are supported. Communications with an IBM Personal Computer is through ACF/VTAM support of a channel or telecommunications-connected IBM 3174 or 3274 Controller.

NetView operators at the automation focal point can monitor and control the target operating system and hardware system consoles to perform such activities as remote Initial Microcode Load (warmstart), Initial Program Load (IPL), time-of-day clock setting, and system initialization. Remote power-on is not supported. This program provides access to NetView's enhanced operational facilities through which support for automating target system operations, such as system initialization procedures, may be developed.

Inter-System Control Facility target system support complements NetView by providing facilities for a single focal point to manage local and remote systems; subsystems, such as JES2, JES3, CICS, and IMS; and communications networks. It is recommended that support for operating system consoles be used mainly for target system initialization. Then, NetView or the Network Communication Control Facility (NCCF) may be started in the target system, and a cross-domain session established with the centralized NetView. Target operating system console support may be moved to this connection. NetView or NCCF in the target system may be used for automation at the target system which allows off-loading of this function from the centralized controlling system.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-263, dated June 16, 1987.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge:   Basic License - \$7,000  
                          DSLO License - 5,250

Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5798-RXC   Inter-System Control Facility for  
                  MVS/XA and MVS/370

### Ordering Information

Orders for licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 8, 1988. Orders entered after the planned availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry, unless a later date is specified.

Users ordering Inter-System Control Facility should specify:

Type: 5798. Model: RXC.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4138 for the one-time charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium for the applicable operating system, as listed below.

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and feature number 9398 for the one-time charge (OTC).

Ordering the DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic licensee. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

**Inter-System Control Facility (MVS/XA)**

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
5850	9/1600 M Tape
5851	9/6250 M Tape
5852	3480 Tape Cartridge

**Inter-System Control Facility Feature (MVS/370)**

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
5860	9/1600 M Tape
5861	9/6250 M Tape
5862	3480 Tape Cartridge

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following unlicensed documentation are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material:

Order Number	Title
SC30-3472	Inter-System Control Facilities Planning and Installation Guide
SC30-3473	Inter-System Control Facilities Operation Guide
GC30-9614	Inter-System Control Facility Licensed Program Specifications
GG24-3181	Inter-System Control Facility Guide

Additional copies will be available, for a fee, at general availability.

**Additional Information**

For more Inter-System Control Facility for MVS/XA and MVS/370 information, please refer to IBM Programming Announcement 287-263, dated June 16, 1987.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## **NetView/Access Services Version 1 Release 1.0 SNA Application Monitor Version 1 Release 1.2 Available**

**NetView/Access Services (NetView/Access)** is an MVS licensed program that enables users of an SNA network who are connected to NetView/Access to use a number of VTAM applications concurrently from a single terminal. NetView/Access protects the network and applications against unauthorized use, and performs automatic logon to, and logoff from, those applications the user is authorized to access based on user profiles.

**SNA Application Monitor (SAMON)** is an MVS licensed program that enables terminals to display the status of all VTAM applications within a network, and to connect the terminal to one of the applications. In addition, SAMON provides the end-user with status information about both an individual application and the entire network.

**NetView/Access Release 1.0, together with SAMON Release 1.2, is designed to extend the scope of IBM's NetView family of communication network management products to the area of application access services.**

**NetView/Access Release 1.0 and SAMON Release 1.2 provide an interface to each other, allowing NetView/Access users access to selected SAMON functions.**

**Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-257, dated June 16, 1987**

### **One-Time Charge:**

<b>NetView/Access Version 1</b>	<b>\$11,200</b>
<b>SAMON Version 1</b>	<b>9,000</b>

### **Monthly License Charge:**

<b>NetView/Access Version 1</b>	<b>510</b>
<b>SAMON Version 1</b>	<b>410</b>

**Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

<b>5665-365</b>	<b>NetView/Access Version 1 (MVS)</b>
<b>5665-345</b>	<b>SAMON Version 1 (MVS)</b>

### **Sponsoring Executive**

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management



# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## **NetView/Access Services Version 1 Release 1.0 SNA Application Monitor Version 1 Release 1.2 Available**

**NetView/Access Services (NetView/Access)** is an MVS licensed program that enables users of an SNA network who are connected to NetView/Access to use a number of VTAM applications concurrently from a single terminal. NetView/Access protects the network and applications against unauthorized use, and performs automatic logon to, and logoff from, those applications the user is authorized to access based on user profiles.

**SNA Application Monitor (SAMON)** is an MVS licensed program that enables terminals to display the status of all VTAM applications within a network, and to connect the terminal to one of the applications. In addition, SAMON provides the end-user with status information about both an individual application and the entire network.

**NetView/Access Release 1.0**, together with **SAMON Release 1.2**, is designed to extend the scope of IBM's NetView family of communication network management products to the area of application access services.

**NetView/Access Release 1.0** and **SAMON Release 1.2** provide an interface to each other, allowing NetView/Access users access to selected SAMON functions.

**Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-257**, dated June 16, 1987

### **One-Time Charge:**

<b>NetView/Access Version 1</b>	<b>\$11,200</b>
<b>SAMON Version 1</b>	<b>9,000</b>

### **Monthly License Charge:**

<b>NetView/Access Version 1</b>	<b>510</b>
<b>SAMON Version 1</b>	<b>410</b>

**Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

<b>5665-365</b>	<b>NetView/Access Version 1 (MVS)</b>
<b>5665-345</b>	<b>SAMON Version 1 (MVS)</b>

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

# Programming Announcement

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 Enhancements and Availability

IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 enhancements provide additional function to the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 licensed program to allow support of new features for the IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal and the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT® Store Controller.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 286-573, dated December 16, 1986.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge: \$1,250  
Multiple Controller Feature: 625

Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5669-033 IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1  
Release 3

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADS)

#### Product Positioning

This product is intended for store systems - retail, supermarket, chain-drug, and mass-merchandise customers.

#### Marketing Strategy

4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 should be marketed to retail, supermarket, chain-drug and mass-merchandise accounts, including 3650 and 3680 customers, since the 4680 replaces these systems.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5669-033" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

**Industry Support:** 4680 Operating System marketing support is provided by the Distribution and Store Systems Industry Marketing Support Center, Raleigh, North Carolina. Assistance is available from the Store Systems branch offices.

**Demonstrations:** Contact your Distribution and Store Systems branch office for information.

**Marketing Assistance Program (MAP):** This program is eligible for a 30% discount under the terms and conditions of the MAP Demonstration System Discount Program announced in Marketing Manager Memorandum M87-080, dated June 2, 1987. Refer to the Branch Coordinator's Guide (ZZ60-2829) for order-processing procedures.

### Education Support

Educational offerings will be updated to include 4680 Operating System Release 3 functions.

### HONE Information

The 4680 Store System Marketing Guide, currently available under the INDUSTRY section of HONE; and a 4680 Sample Proposal, currently available under the PROP section of HONE, will be updated to reflect this announcement.

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by Distribution and Store Systems Industry Support, Raleigh.

**Field Support:** System engineers should contact the Store Systems branch office for technical assistance. Store Systems branch office system engineers may access EQUAL through the HONE CMS EXEC, EQMSS1, to review answers to 4680-related questions, or to enter appropriate EQUAL questions (entry of EQUAL questions will be available only to the branch office specialists and designated system engineers until general availability). Articles containing installation and other technical topics not documented in system reference library publications will also be made available through the HONE applications INFOSystem or INFOMENU.

## **Administrative Information**

### ***Ordering Information***

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

### ***Special Instructions***

Administrators responsible for ordering this program should understand that unlike other IBM Personal Computer licensed programs, the programs in this announcement are subject to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs and will be distributed by IBM Software Distribution. These circumstances produce special administrative considerations. Refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG4.

### ***Programming RPQs***

Requests for PRPQs will be accepted on the first customer shipment date. Response time and delivery are dependent upon complexity.

### ***Sponsoring Executive***

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 Enhancements and Availability

IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 enhancements provide additional function to the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 licensed program to allow support of new features for the IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal and the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT® Store Controller.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 286-573, dated December 16, 1986.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge: \$1,250  
Multiple Controller Feature: 625

Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

5669-033 IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1  
Release 3

### Highlights

IBM 4683 Terminal functions provide support for the following:

- IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model A01, including use of additional memory as a virtual file
- 228mm (9-inch) monochrome display
- IBM 8503 (12-inch) Monochrome and IBM 8513 (12-inch) Color Displays
- Matrix Keyboard attachment
- Attachment of the Hand Held Bar Code Reader

### 5170 Store Controller

- IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Adapter Card (feature number 6240) in the 5170
- IBM 6157 Streaming Tape Drive attached to the 5170
- Using the Multiport Adapter Card in a multiple-console mode in the 5170
- Attachment of IBM 3161 and 3164 Terminals to the 5170 via the Multiport Adapter for use as auxiliary consoles

- Remote Command Processor that allows the performance of certain maintenance applications from a host site
- Use of additional memory in the 5170 as a virtual file
- Improved file build/access performance for large, keyed files
- System audible alarm message file
- File compression and decompression
- Display Manager screens with COBOL and C
- Print spooler enhancements.

### Description

#### Additional Memory

IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 enhancements provide support for the new 4683 Model A01. This model contains 2,048Kb of memory.

In-memory file support is a new function in the store controller and terminal which may be used to provide fast access to data stored in memory, rather than on disk. It also allows applications in the terminal to make effective use of memory for such functions as terminal price look-up.

#### Matrix Keyboard

The attachment of the Matrix Keyboard (feature number 3323) and the Hand Held Bar Code Reader (feature number 4500) are also supported. The Matrix Keyboard provides menu-item selection, numeric (in a data-entry arrangement) and system function, an audible alarm, and a manager's override keylock. The Hand Held Bar Code Reader uses LED technology for lighting the label and a CCD sensor for reading the label.

#### Monochrome Displays

The 228mm (9-inch) and the 8503 (12-inch) monochrome displays, and the 8513 (12-inch) color display are now supported on the 4683. The 127mm (5 inch) display is still supported. Support is discontinued for the previously announced 300mm (12-inch) monochrome and 346mm (14-inch) color display.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

## 5170 Store Controller

The operating system supports one or two Multiport Adapter Cards (feature number 6240). Typically, the ports on a Multiport Adapter Card are used for remote printers, displays, and other remote devices. This adapter provides up to eight serial ports; the first four support RS-232 interfaces only, and the second four (optional) support either RS-232 or (optionally) RS-422 interfaces. The 4680 Operating System supports six of the ports using asynchronous communication only. Two RS-232 ports may use asynchronous or binary synchronous communication, and may be configured to run up to 9600 bps. In the 4680 Operating System, SDLC is not supported on this adapter.

### Multiple Console Support

In addition to remote device support, multiple console support, which allows auxiliary console support with the attachment of 3161/3164 terminals to the controller via the Multiport Adapter Card, is now provided. The 3161 and 3164 perform all operator console functions, including running applications, system control functions, window control screen, and displaying system messages. A maximum of eight auxiliary consoles are supported.

Performance of this multiple-console function is dependent upon the number of concurrent consoles in use, and the display usage of each console.

### Tape Streamer

Under the 4680 Operating System, the Tape Streamer may be used to back up files, groups of files, or entire fixed disks. A set of tape-utility functions is supplied to control backup, restore, and associated operations by using the tape streamer and fixed disks. Tape utilities may be initiated, manually, through menu-driven screens, by a 4680 BASIC program via an application interface, or through communications from a remote host system. This backup and restore capability is intended to complement the 4680 for those users who want tape backup.

### Remote Command Processor

With the Remote Command Processor licensed program, certain maintenance applications may be performed from a host site, including:

- Running the Apply Software Maintenance application
- Initiating reports taken from the dumps, traces, configuration, module level, or system log
- Retrieving report output back to the host.

### Keyed Files

An Alternate Hashing Algorithm for keyed files is available and recommended for keyed files, such as the item record file, when the size of the file exceeds 3Mb. This new algorithm provides reduced chaining of records from the current algorithm for these large files, is optional, and must be specifically selected by file name prior to file creation.

### Audible Alarm

With the Build Audible Alarm message-file utility, a message file may be built that contains the numbers of the messages to activate the audible alarm at the 5170. This function is useful for alerting store personnel to situations requiring immediate attention.

## Compression/Decompression

File compression is used to cause a file to occupy a smaller amount of disk or diskette space than the original form of the file. This function, with decompression, may be used to save transmission time when uploading and downloading files, and may be invoked under the Remote Command Processor from a host site.

### Display Manager

The Display Manager Runtime Library may be used to link with COBOL or C-generated code using Display Manager commands.

### Print Spooler

The Print Spooler function is enhanced to perform such functions as printing jobs from applications and returning immediate control back to the application without waiting for the job to print. The status of jobs queued to printers may now be determined by the application. Through the enhanced print command, a complete listing of queued jobs to each printer may be determined. With the spooler, jobs may be moved from one printer queue to another, cancelled, or held. This ability exists from the enhanced print command and from the application. The Print Spooler now supports up to eight printers with the Multiport Adapter feature.

For additional Operating System information, refer to IBM Programming Announcement 286-573, dated December 16, 1986.

### Publications

A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following unlicensed publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material.

- IBM 4680 Store System: User's Guide (SC30-3367)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Planning Guide (SC30-3362)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Programming Guide (SC30-3357)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Display Manager User's Guide (SC30-3404)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Messages, Symptoms and Problem Resolution Guide(SC30-3358)\*
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9593)

\* Compatible with Releases 1, 2, and 3.

Additional copies may be ordered through your IBM marketing representative, at general availability.

### Education Support

Educational offerings will be updated to include 4680 Operating System Release 3 functions.

### Schedule

Planned general availability is for December 31, 1987, except for 3164 support, which is planned to be available by second quarter 1988.

### Technical Information

### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** This licensed program is designed to operate on the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT Store Controller with a display and the IBM 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model 1 or Model A01. A printer

is required for the controller at the central site. For specific display and printer models supported by this application, see IBM Programming Announcement 286-001, dated January 8, 1986.

Tape Streamer support requires the PC Adapter Card (feature number 4156) and the IBM 6157 Streaming Tape Drive.

**Storage Requirements:** The 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3, including support for host communications, 4680 BASIC run-times, and one of the three IBM 4680 Store Systems applications (General Sales, Supermarket, or Chain Drug) require 2.5Mb of storage. The Multiple Controller feature requires an additional 5Mb for a total of 3Mb of storage in the store controller.

The file requirements for the operating system are approximately 11Mb. Applications require additional file space.

The operating system in the 4683 Point-of-Sale Terminal Model 1 or Model A01 requires 400Kb which includes full-feature configuration and Model 2 support, but does not include optional in-memory file support. In-memory file support requires 90Kb. Application programs require additional storage.

This licensed program is designed for rapid service provided there is:

- A printer at the central site for printing diagnostic information
- A switched-line modem and an asynchronous or binary synchronous communications adapter at the central site for rapidly transmitting fixes from the change team to the central site, and retrieving diagnostic information from the central site.

**Programming Requirements:** The 4680 Operating System has no software prerequisites.

Alert support at the host processor requires NetView™ (5665-362, 5665-361, or 5664-204). Network management support provided by NetView includes 4680-specific interpretation of alerts, including alert descriptions, recommended actions, and detail descriptions.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

Users may write BASIC applications with IBM 4680 BASIC (5669-034). Host processor application programs for the transmission of programs and user data must be provided by the customer. The Advanced Data Communications for Stores (5735-XR2) and Inbound File Analysis and Retrieval (5798-DTP) licensed programs are available to assist in these activities.

Management and controlled distribution of 4680 programs and user data from a System/370 Host System running in MVS/XA, MVS/370, or VSE may be performed with Distributed Systems Executive (DSX) Version 3 Release 2 (5668-915). DSX addresses planning, control, tracking, and processing of the 4680 user programs and data.

**Compatibility:** This program is not compatible with the current IBM 3650 or IBM 3680 Programmable Store Systems.

The optional, IBM 4680 Multiple Controller Feature Support is compatible with IBM PC Networks using the IBM PC Network Adapter. IBM PC Networks can contain

5170 Store Controllers (running the 4680 feature support) and other IBM Personal Computers (running the IBM PC Local Area Network Program Version 1.2). Compatibility is limited to disk service. No printer sharing or application-to-application communication is supported between a Personal Computer running the 4680 Operating System and a Personal Computer running IBM Personal Computer Disk Operating System (DOS).

**Limitations:** The 4680 Operating System consists of two components; the first executes on the 5170 and the second executes on the 4683 Model 1 or Model A01 attached by a store loop to the 5170.

The 4683 Model 1 or Model A01 component may be used, concurrently, on up to 64 4683 Model 1 or Model A01 terminals attached by a store loop to the 5170 by the operating system licensee.

The 5170 will support a second store loop only in a backup situation, therefore, a single controller may have up to 128 4683 Model 1 or Model A01 terminals attached on two store loops, in a backup situation.

Support for the component executing on the IBM 4683 Model 1 or Model A01 terminal will be provided through the component executing on the 5170.

**Performance Considerations:** Factors that affect operating system performance include:

- Number of terminals on the store loop
- Number of tasks running concurrently in the store controller
- Speed of the host processor communication lines
- Use of Model 2 terminals
- Use of the Multiple Controller feature
- Use of the Multiport Adapter feature

Factors that affect Multiple Console Feature performance include:

- Number of concurrent consoles
- Display usage of each auxiliary console

#### **Planning Information**

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for:

- Installing, supervising, managing, and using the licensed program
- Configuring the 4680 Operating System using the IBM 4680 Store System: Planning Guide (GC30-3362)
- Producing a backup copy of the 4680 Operating System
- Protecting data from unintended modification, destruction, or disclosure, and for the accuracy and integrity of the results
- Backing up sensitive data during service periods
- Providing appropriate hardware for rapid transmission of emergency fixes and printing diagnostic information
- Technical coordination of problems at the service site, including:
  - Problem determination

- Problem source identification
- Submission of APAR data
- Central-site service
- Application of maintenance
- Implementing IBM Support Center recommendations
- Transmission of emergency fixes from IBM.

**Installability:** Installation of the 4680 Operating System is the responsibility of the customer.

Installation is made easier by menu-driven configuration screens at the 5170. The IBM 4680 Store Systems: Planning Guide (GC30-3362) contains information that assists in filling out the information required by these screens; however, most configuration questions are provided with defaults so that only those items that require a change need be answered.

Migration from Release 2 to Release 3 of the 4680 Operating System may be accomplished from a host site using Apply Software Maintenance through the Remote Command Processor.

**Packaging:** IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 basic machine-readable material will be shipped on 5-1/4-inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector. Publications consist of a program directory, memo to users, user's guide, programming guide, messages, display manager user's guide, and a licensed program specification.

#### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

The security function of the IBM 4680 Operating System is dependent upon authorization services (password) for each user and files protected from unauthorized access which may be specified during configuration.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

#### **Ordering Information**

##### **Current Licensees**

Current licensees of the 4680 Operating System will automatically receive this update from IBM Software Distribution. This update will include updates to the Multiple Controller Feature (5888) and the base release (5898). Shipment of Release 3 is scheduled to be completed by January 15, 1988.

##### **New Licensees**

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 8, 1988. Orders entered after the availability date should be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of the IBM 4680 Operating System should specify:

Type: 5669. Model: 033.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset

registration. Specify feature number 4606 for a one-time charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

To order the Multiple Controller Feature, specify feature number 4642 for a one-time charge and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
Base Operating System 5898	2 Diskettes
Multiple/Controller Feature 5888	2 Diskettes

**Note:** Current licensees of Release 2 who wish to order the Multiple Controller Feature must also upgrade to the new base of Release 3 (5898) to be compatible with the new release of feature 5888.

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material:

- IBM 4680 Store System: User's Guide (SC30-3367)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Planning Guide (SC30-3362)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Programming Guide (SC30-3357)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Display Manager User's Guide (SC30-3404)
- IBM 4680 Store System: Messages, Symptoms, and Problem Resolution Guide (SC30-3358)\*
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9593)

\* Compatible with Releases 1, 2, and 3.

Additional copies may be ordered through your IBM marketing representative.

#### **Terms and Conditions**

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used, except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the Exhibit for IBM Store Systems. The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the one-time charge option:

Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Discount
---	----------

6-59	6%
60-149	12%
150-224	16%
225 or more	20%

The licensed programs in this announcement are in Category H.

**Warranted:** Yes.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: No. This licensed program will be available without source licensed program materials. It will be available in object code.

**Testing Period:** One month.

**Program Services:** Central service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until discontinued by IBM upon six months' written notice.

**Program Currency:** Program Services for the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 2 will be available until December 1989. Program Services for the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 1 will be available until June 1989.

**Charges:**

	One-Time Charge
Operating System Base	\$1,250
Multiple Controller Feature	625

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated, one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as a optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.





# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 Availability

IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 provides enhancements to the 4680 programming language for use in supporting the new Operator Display feature and the new Shopper Display feature attached to the IBM 4683 Terminal. IBM 4680 BASIC also supports the attachment of multiple displays on the 4683. This licensed program is based on CB86™, LINK-86™, and LIB-86™.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 286-572, dated December 16, 1986.

### Charges:

One-Time Charge: \$2,500

Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987

The IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 licensed program is now planned to be available December 31, 1987. The original planned availability date was September 25, 1987.

™ Trademarks of Digital Research, Inc.

5669-034 IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2

### Sponsoring Executive

R.W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 Availability

**IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2** provides enhancements to the 4680 programming language for use in supporting the new Operator Display feature and the new Shopper Display feature attached to the IBM 4683 Terminal. IBM 4680 BASIC also supports the attachment of multiple displays on the 4683. This licensed program is based on CB86™, LINK-86™, and LIB-86™.

**Reference:** IBM Programming Announcement 286-572, dated December 16, 1986.

### Charges:

**One-Time Charge: \$2,500**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

The IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 licensed program is now planned to be available December 31, 1987. The original planned availability date was September 25, 1987.

™ Trademarks of Digital Research, Inc.

**5669-034 IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2**

### Highlights

New functions include support for the following on the 4683:

- Operator Display 4683 Terminal
- Shopper Display feature on the 4683
- Multiple displays

### Description

IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 provides enhancements to the 4680 programming language for use in supporting the new Operator Display feature and the new Shopper Display feature of the 4683.

Runtime and compiler support can make use of new device names (ANDISPLAY2, SDISPLAY, and VIDEO2) in 4680 BASIC source applications to address the new displays.

The Operator Display is not explicitly identifiable in BASIC since it uses the alphanumeric (ANDISPLAY and ANDISPLAY2) device names. However, configuration of the 4680 Operating System is used to define the 4683 base unit socket to which the alphanumeric or Operator Displays are attached. This allows applications to be

designed to operate on terminals with alphanumeric displays or operator displays.

### Ordering Information

#### Current Licensees

Current licensees of IBM 4680 BASIC will automatically receive this update from IBM Software Distribution. This shipment of Release 2 is scheduled to be completed by January 15, 1988.

#### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 8, 1988. Orders entered after the availability date should be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of IBM 4689 BASIC should specify:

Type: 5669. Model: 034.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4607 for a one-time charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**Basic Machine-readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
----------------	---------------------

5898	2 Diskettes
------	-------------

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material:

- IBM 4680 BASIC Language Reference Manual (SC30-3356)
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9594)

Additional copies may be ordered through your IBM marketing representative.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature maintains an item record file in terminal memory to allow for price lookup when the terminal is offline. In addition, information on the transactions which occur while the terminal is offline are stored in the terminal memory. This data is sent to the controller when the terminal goes back to an online mode.

Program Number	One-Time Charge
-------------------	--------------------

5669-031	\$350
----------	-------

Planned Availability Date: March 25, 1988

5669-031	IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature
----------	--

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADS)

#### Product Positioning

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is an application program designed for retail personnel who use the General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 with only one IBM 5170 PC/AT Store Controller.

#### Marketing Strategy

IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is intended for all users of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 who require backup, have a small number of item records, and a small number of terminals.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5669-031" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### Marketing Support

**Marketing Assistance Program (MAP):** The IBM 4680 Store System family of programs is not approved as Designated Licensed Programs for MAP. However, this program is eligible for a 30% discount under the terms and conditions of the MAP Demonstration System Discount Program announced for the IBM 4680 Store System in Memorandum to Marketing Management M87-080, dated June 2, 1987. Refer to the Branch Coordinator's Guide (ZZ60-2829) for order processing procedures.

**Industry Support:** Marketing support for the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature licensed program is provided by the Distribution and Store Systems Industry Marketing Support Center in Raleigh, North Carolina. Assistance is available from Store Systems branch offices.

### Education Support

See IBM Education Announcement 486-001, dated January 8, 1986. Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature.

### HONE Information

The 4680 Store System Marketing Guide, currently available under the INDUSTRY section of HONE, and 4680 Sample Proposal, currently available under the PROP section of HONE, will be updated to reflect this announcement.

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by Distribution Store Systems Industry Support in Raleigh, North Carolina.

**Field Support:** Branch office system engineers should contact the Store Systems branch office for technical assistance. The Store Systems branch office system engineers may also access EQUAL through the HONE CMS EXEC, EQMSS1, to review answers to IBM 4680 related questions or to enter appropriate EQUAL questions. (Entry of EQUAL questions will be available only to the Store Systems branch office specialists and designated Store Systems system engineers until planned availability). Articles containing installation and other technical topics not documented in formal system

reference library publications will also be made available through HONE applications INFOSYSTEM or INFOMENU.

## **Administrative Information**

### ***Volume Discount***

Customers who have installed the basic license of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application prior to March 25, 1988, with an existing Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) or special bid for 5669-031, who wish to order the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature, will receive the same discount in the existing VPA or special bid as 5669-031 for the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature.

### ***Ordering Information***

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

**Special Software Instructions:** Administrators responsible for ordering this program should understand that unlike other IBM Personal Computer software, the programs in this announcement are subject to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs and will be distributed from Sterling Forest, New York by IBM Software Distribution. These circumstances produce special administrative considerations. Refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG4.

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are available under the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA). For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

### ***Programming RPQs***

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

### ***Sponsoring Executive***

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature maintains an item record file in terminal memory to allow for price lookup when the terminal is offline. In addition, information on the transactions which occur while the terminal is offline are stored in the terminal memory. This data is sent to the controller when the terminal goes back to an online mode.

Program Number	One-Time Charge
-------------------	--------------------

5669-031	\$350
----------	-------

Planned Availability Date: March 25, 1988

5669-031	IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature
----------	--

### Highlights

- Allows for price lookup when IBM Store Controller is not available
- Logs transaction data when IBM Store Controller is not available
- Provides an option to reduce the size of the terminal item record file
- Provides facilities to maintain the terminal item record file.

### Description

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature maintains an item record file in terminal memory in order to perform price look up functions when the terminal is in offline mode. Information on transactions will be logged when the terminal is offline. These offline transactions will be sent to the controller when the terminal returns to an online condition. Recovery of the transaction data which was accumulated during the offline period is sent to the controller without affecting normal sales operations. The offline data is the same data which would have been sent had the terminal remained online. The terminal look up function is optional. Logging of transaction data can be accomplished without terminal price lookup. No operator intervention is required to perform item look up or to log transaction data in terminal memory when the terminal goes offline from the controller. These functions provide for backup and recovery when the controller is unavailable with no loss of transaction data and no loss of price look up capability.

### Publications

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature User's Guide (SC30-3499) and the IBM 4680 General Sales Terminal Offline Feature Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9613) are shipped with the program.

Additional copies of basic publications will be available after planned availability. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

Customers currently subscribing to SLSS will receive publication updates automatically.

### Education Support

See IBM Education Announcement 486-001, dated January 8, 1986. Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature.

### Schedule

Availability is planned for March 25, 1988.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** This licensed feature was developed to operate on the IBM 5170 PC/AT Store Controller and the IBM 4683 Model A01 which has 2 million bytes of terminal memory.

The store controller configuration is an IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller with a video display. A printer is required for the controller at the central site. (For specific models of displays and printers supported by this application, see IBM Programming Announcements 286-001, dated January 8, 1986, and 286-156 dated April 16, 1986). This feature will require 277K of memory in the IBM 5170 PC/AT Store Controller. These requirements are in addition to the memory requirements of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2, IBM 4680 Operating System, and user programs.

The IBM 4683 Model 1 or A01 is required. The IBM 4683 Model 1 is limited to 1 million bytes of memory and will not have enough memory to fully utilize this feature. However, depending on the user's environment there may be sufficient memory to use this feature with a small number of item records and limited logging of

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

transactions. The IBM 4683 Model A01 has 2 million bytes of terminal memory. It is the user's responsibility to determine if the IBM 4683 Model 1 can be used to meet his requirements. This feature uses 44K of terminal memory in addition to the memory space which must be reserved for the terminal record file and transaction logging. These requirements are in addition to the memory requirements of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application, the IBM 4680 Operating System, and user programs.

**Host Requirements:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 and the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature are licensed at each Store Controller, which is the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller. A host system is not required for application program development, installation, or maintenance.

**Programming Language:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is written in IBM 4680 BASIC.

**Controller Environment:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature executes in the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller and the IBM 4683 Point-Of-Sale Terminal Model A01 and uses the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 and the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2. The IBM 4683 Model 1 may be used if there is terminal memory available. The users must evaluate the memory available in the IBM 4683 Model 1 to determine if their requirements can be met with the IBM 4683 Model 1.

**Programming Requirements:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature requires the IBM 4680 Operating System Release 3 and the IBM General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 as prerequisites.

**Compatibility:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is compatible with the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2.

**Limitations:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is limited by the amount of terminal memory available for item records and transaction logging. The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature is not supported with the Optional Multiple Controller Feature of the IBM 4680 Operating System, and is not compatible with the IBM 4680 Price Management Application Feature. The IBM 4683 Model 1 is limited to 1 million bytes of memory and will not have enough memory to fully utilize this feature. It is the user's responsibility to determine if the IBM 4683 Model 1 can be used to meet his requirements.

**Performance Considerations:** Performance will be dependent on the volume of transactions, the number of items being processed, the number of terminals using this feature, and the amount of transaction data being retrieved from the terminal. The users must evaluate all of these factors in order to determine if this feature meets their requirements.

### **Planning Information**

**Customer Responsibilities:** Installation files will be provided on diskettes to simplify installation. The user has to specify through a personalization process six different options.

**Installability:** Installation of this feature will require a relinking of this feature with the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 and any user changes.

**Packaging:** IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature machine-readable material will be shipped on 5 1/4-inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector in Personal Computer format. Optional machine-readable material will be shipped on 5 1/4-inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector in Personal Computer format.

A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following unlicensed documents are shipped with the basic machine-readable material:

- IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature User's Guide (SC30-3499)
- IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9613).

An addendum to the program directory is shipped with the optional material.

### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature uses the security and auditability features of the General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2, which include operator authorization and control by function and transaction type, and can be limited to specified terminals. Significant events are logged for audit purposes. Additional security is provided by the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

### **Ordering Information**

Ordering instructions will be provided when the program becomes available.

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the Exhibit for IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs. The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the one-time charge option:

Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Discount Percent
---	---------------------

6-59	6%
60-149	12%
150-224	16%
225 or more	20%

The licensed programs in this announcement are in Category J.

**Warranted:** Basic License - Yes. DSLO - Not Applicable.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: Yes. This licensed program will be available with some licensed program materials designated as RESTRICTED MATERIALS OF IBM. The remaining licensed program materials are available and are not designated as RESTRICTED MATERIALS OF IBM.

**Testing Period:** Basic license only, one month.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until discontinued by IBM upon six months written notice.

**Charges**

Program Name	One-Time Charge
IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature	\$ 350
Licensed Optional Materials Charge	4,000

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.

**Licensed Optional Program Materials Charge:** Selected optional program materials are available for a separate one-time charge.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 Support for COBOL

The IBM 4680 Support for COBOL allows applications written in IBM COBOL/2 to execute under the control of the 4680 Operating System on the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller.

**One-Time Charge: \$300**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987.**

**5601-101 IBM 4680 Support for COBOL**

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD
- IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADS)

#### Marketing Strategy

This product should be marketed to Retail, Supermarket, Chain Drug and Mass Merchandiser accounts. This includes our current customers since the 4680 is a replacement for the current 3650 and 3680 PSS system.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all programs by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5601-101" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

**Industry Support:** Marketing support for the IBM 4680 Operating System licensed program is provided by the Distribution and Store Systems Industry Marketing Support Center in Raleigh, North Carolina. Assistance is available from Store Systems branch offices.

**Demonstrations:** Contact your Store Systems branch office for information about demonstrations.

**Marketing Assistance Program:** This program is eligible for a 30% discount under the terms and conditions of the MAP Demonstration System Discount Program announced for the 4680 Store System in Marketing Manager Memorandum M87-080 dated June 2, 1987. Refer to the Branch Coordinator's Guide (ZZ60-2829) for order processing procedures.

### Education Support

Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 Support for COBOL.

### HONE Information

The 4680 Store System Marketing Guide, currently available under the INDUSTRY section of HONE, and 4680 Sample Proposal currently available under the PROP section of HONE, will be updated to reflect this announcement.

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by Distribution and Store Systems Industry Support.

**Field Support:** Branch office system engineers should contact the Store Systems branch office for technical assistance. Store Systems branch office system engineers can access EQUAL through the HONE CMS EXEC, EQMSS1, to review answers to IBM 4680-related questions or to enter appropriate EQUAL questions. (Entry of EQUAL questions will be available only to the branch office specialists and designated systems engineers until general availability). Articles containing installation and other technical topics not documented in formal system reference library publications will also be made available through HONE applications INFOSYSTEM or INFOMENU.

### Administrative Information

#### Volume Discount

The revised Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Exhibit for IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs (Exhibit No. VP5748-2) is enclosed and must be used for all new VPAs effective immediately. Additional copies are available through DAWN.

Licensed programs in this announcement are in a new category. Customers with an existing VPA or special bid who wish to order these programs in quantities that qualify for a discount must sign a separate VPA or special bid. No customer notification of this revised exhibit is required.

#### Ordering Information

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.



**Special Software Instructions:** Administrators responsible for ordering this program should understand that unlike other IBM Personal Computer software, the programs in this announcement are subject to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs and will be distributed from Sterling Forest, NY by IBM Software Distribution. These circumstances produce special administrative considerations. Refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG4.

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are available under the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA). For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

**Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

**Attachment Information**

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 287-560-1A\* Z125-4008 IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs VPA Exhibit

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

**Sponsoring Executive**

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs**  
**Volume Procurement Amendment**  
**to Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs**

**Exhibit No.: VP5748-2**  
**December 15, 1987**

**1. ELIGIBLE PROGRAMS:**

<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>
A	5748-D14	G	5668-914
B	5748-D15	H	5669-033
C	5748-D21	J	5669-031
D	5748-D22	K	5669-032
E	5735-D61	L	5669-212
F	5735-D62	M	5601-101

**2. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE AND AVAILABLE CONTRACT PERIOD DURATION:**

<u>Minimum Quantity of Eligible Programs by Category</u>	<u>Discount Percent</u>			
<u>Duration (Months)</u>	<u>Categories</u>			
36	<u>A thru D**</u>	<u>E thru G**</u>	<u>H, J, M**</u>	<u>K, L**</u>
6	*	*	6%	*
10	10%	*	6%	*
25	15%	*	6%	*
45	15%	*	6%	4%
50	20%	*	6%	4%
60		*	12%	4%
90		*	12%	8%
100		15%	12%	8%
150		15%	16%	12%
200		20%	16%	12%
225		20%	20%	16%
300		30%		

\* Not applicable to this Category

\*\* Programs from one Category cannot be added together with those in another Category to determine the applicable Discount Percent.

- 3. PRICE PROTECTION-UPPER LIMIT PERCENT:** First Year of Contract Period of the Volume Commitment: 0%  
 Second Year of Contract Period of the Volume Commitment: 7%  
 Third Year of Contract Period of the Volume Commitment: 14%

- 4. The Price Protection and Additional Quantities Sections of the Referenced Amendment are amended as follows:**  
 All Additional Quantities ordered in the third year of the Contract Period must be included in a Supplement for Additional Quantities. The single unit one-time charge for such Additional Quantities will be the single unit one-time charge generally in effect at the time the Supplement, signed by the Customer, is received by IBM and is not subject to increase during the Contract Period. Otherwise, there are no changes to the terms and conditions applicable to the Sections referenced above.

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 Support for COBOL

The IBM 4680 Support for COBOL allows applications written in IBM COBOL/2 to execute under the control of the 4680 Operating System on the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller.

**One-Time Charge: \$300**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987.**

**5601-101 IBM 4680 Support for COBOL**

### Highlights

- IBM 4680 Support for applications written using IBM COBOL/2.

### Description

The IBM 4680 Support for COBOL provides runtime library support for COBOL applications written using COBOL/2 to execute under the 4680 Operating System on the 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller. The COBOL/2 applications must be written and compiled under PC DOS. Then these applications must be linked with the IBM 4680 Support using the 4680 Operating System to run on the store controller. The COBOL Support consists of:

- Two Install batch files, one for IBM DOS 3.3 or OS/2 and one for the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 2 (4680 OS) or later.
- The 4680 COBOL Shared Runtime Library which is installed using the Install batch file on the 4680 OS.
- A Transfer Vector Object Module to be used in the link process.
- Documentation

### Publications

A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following unlicensed publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material from IBM Software Distribution:

- IBM 4680 COBOL Users Guide (on the diskette)
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9612)

Hard copy of the Users Guide may be obtained by printing from the diskette.

### Education Support

Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 Operating System Release 3.

### Schedule

Availability is planned for December 31, 1987. Refer to "Ordering Information" below for ship dates.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The IBM 4680 Support for COBOL licensed program is designed to operate on the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller with a display. A printer is required for the controller at the central site. For specific models of displays and printers supported by this application, see IBM Programming Announcement 286-001, dated January 8, 1986.

The COBOL/2 compiler is designed to operate under a wide range of PCs. For specific models supported by COBOL/2, see IBM Programming Announcement 287-104 dated April 2, 1987.

Storage requirements for the IBM 4680 Support for COBOL is 10K bytes in the store controller. Application programs will require additional storage. The file requirements for the COBOL support are approximately 500K bytes. Applications require additional file space.

**Programming Requirements:** The IBM 4680 Support for COBOL only runs under the 4680 Operating System.

COBOL Operation requires:

- The Linker utility on the 4680 Operating System Optional Programs diskette.
- The POSTLINK utility also on the 4680 Operating System Optional Programs diskette to enhance the loading process.

The compiler only runs under PC DOS 3.3 or OS/2 and therefore has different programming requirements than the runtime support.

COBOL Compilation requires:

- IBM COBOL/2 Compiler
- IBM DOS 3.3 or OS/2.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

### Limitations

- The COBOL support is limited to controller applications.
- There are some differences between facilities provided by IBM PC DOS 3.3 or OS/2 and the 4680 Operating System which may impact the design of COBOL applications written to run on both systems.

**Performance Considerations:** Factors that affect performance of applications running in the controller include:

- Number of tasks running concurrently in the store controller
- Speed of the host processor communication lines
- Use of the Multiple Controller feature

### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for:

- Installation, supervision, management, and use of the licensed program, including use of the Install Batch files for 4680 Support for COBOL
- Configuring the IBM 4680 Operating System using the IBM 4680 Store System: Planning Guide (GC30-3362) as input
- Producing a backup copy of the IBM 4680 Operating System and the IBM 4680 Support for COBOL
- Protection of data from unintended modification, destruction, or disclosure, and for the accuracy and integrity of the results
- Backup of sensitive data during service periods
- Providing appropriate hardware for rapid transmission of emergency fixes and printing of diagnostic information
- Technical coordination of problems at the service site to include:
  - Problem determination
  - Problem source identification
    - Note: COBOL/2 Compiler problems should be handled in accordance with the procedures described in that product.
  - Submission of APAR data
  - Central-site service
  - Application of maintenance
  - Implementing IBM Support Center recommendations
  - Transmission of emergency fixes from IBM

**Installability:** Installation of IBM 4680 Support for COBOL is the responsibility of the customer. Installation is aided by the Install Batch Files.

**Packaging:** IBM 4680 Support for COBOL basic machine readable material will be shipped on 5-1/4 inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector. Publications consist of a program directory, user's guide, and a licensed program specification.

### Security, Auditability, and Control

If sensitive data is sent over external communication facilities, user management may wish to pursue the application of cryptography.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

### Ordering Information

#### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 15, 1988. Orders entered after the availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

Users of IBM 4680 Support for COBOL should specify:

Type: 5601. Model: 101.

To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4544 for a One-Time Charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
5898	2HC Diskette

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo to users, program directory and one copy of the following unlicensed publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material from IBM Software Distribution:

- IBM 4680 COBOL Users Guide (on the diskette)
- Licensed Program Specifications

### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the Exhibit for IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs. The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the One-Time Charge option:

Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Discount Percent
6-59	6%
60-149	12%
150-224	16%
225 or more	20%

The licensed programs in this announcement are in Category M.

**Warranted:** Yes.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: No. This licensed program will be available without source licensed program materials. It will be available in object code.

**Testing Period:** One month.

**Program Services:** Central Service, through the IBM Support Center, will be available until discontinued by IBM upon six months written notice.

Note: For service of the COBOL/2 Compiler refer to "Customer Responsibilities" above.

#### Charges

Program Name	One-Time Charge
IBM 4680 Support for COBOL	\$300

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as a optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply. A conversion charge may apply.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Print Services Facility/Virtual Machine Version 1 Release 1.1

Print Services Facility/VM (PSF/VM) is enhanced to add Advanced Function Printing (AFP) support for the IBM 3812 Model 2 Pageprinter with the IBM 3270 Information Display System Attachment feature (feature number 3190) via the Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem (RSCS), and includes other performance and usability improvements. PSF/VM support is announced for the IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Models 3, 6, and 8, and for the IBM 3820 Page Printer.

The Print Services Facility Base feature, previously announced in IBM Programming Announcement 286-199, dated May 20, 1986, is offered as two, separately orderable features: the PSF Command feature and the Print Services feature. Those customers who have multiple VM systems may now have Advanced Function Printing support available on all their systems, at a reduced cost, by ordering the PSF Command feature separately for those systems that do not have AFP printers attached.

### Charges:

#### PSF Command feature:

Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge	Monthly License Charge
		\$125
10	\$1,290	
20	2,260	
30	3,230	
40	3,230	

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

5664-198      Print Services Facility/VM  
Version 1 Release 1.1

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

NCMD  
SWMD

#### Product Positioning

PSF/VM Release 1.1 allows customers to reduce their printing costs in a number of ways. The PSF Command feature may reduce cost by allowing the customer who has multiple systems to license only the PSF Command on some of the VM systems. The improved performance for those who are installing in the VM Release 5, or later,

environments should also reduce printing costs. The addition of IBM 3812 Model 2 Pageprinter support increases the customer's options and further demonstrates IBM's commitment to Advanced Function Printing.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINT or "Points 5664-198" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

Market support is available from the Boulder National Marketing Center by calling 263-6446 (IBM dial network) or 303-924-6446, VM-ID HELP38XX at node BLDVM2.

#### HONE Information

The configuration aid, CFPROGS, will be available through HONE on December 15, 1987, and will be available to eligible INFOExpress customers. The fast path name is "CFPROGS PSFVM".

#### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

Installation and technical support will be provided by National Technical Support -- Large Systems Technical Support.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialist for technical marketing assistance. System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSystem and HONE EQUAL. System engineers should research their questions in INFOSystem using the search words PSF VM, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

**Early Support Program:** There will be no Early Support Program for this product.

**Systems Assurance:** A branch office review is required prior to order entry for the first installation per customer location of the PSF/VM. A Systems Assurance Product Review (SAPR) Guide will be available from the branch office systems assurance coordinator and through HONE SAPR using the search word 'PSF/VM' to support the installation planning and systems assurance review

activities. Thirty days after the date of this letter, the Headquarters Systems Assurance Designated Product List on HONE SAPR HQDPL should be used as the source of current systems assurance review requirements.

#### **Administrative Information**

#### **Ordering Information**

With this announcement, the following billing features are withdrawn:

- 4774
- 0121
- 0122
- 0123
- 0124
- 9549
- 0125
- 0126
- 0127
- 1028

This program has a complex ordering structure and every order must be configured through the HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, should be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

**Processor Group-To-Processor Group Upgrades:** The program in this announcement is eligible for processor group upgrades (e.g., Group 20 to Group 40) when notification is received that the customer has changed the processor (designated machine) on which the licensed program is running. For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. DVG33.

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** The program in this announcement is available under the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA). For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

#### **Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Print Services Facility/Virtual Machine Version 1 Release 1.1

Print Services Facility/VM (PSF/VM) is enhanced to add Advanced Function Printing (AFP) support for the IBM 3812 Model 2 Pageprinter with the IBM 3270 Information Display System Attachment feature (feature number 3190) via the Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem (RSCS), and includes other performance and usability improvements. PSF/VM support is announced for the IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Models 3, 6, and 8, and for the IBM 3820 Page Printer.

The Print Services Facility Base feature, previously announced in IBM Programming Announcement 286-199, dated May 20, 1986, is offered as two, separately orderable features: the PSF Command feature and the Print Services feature. Those customers who have multiple VM systems may now have Advanced Function Printing support available on all their systems, at a reduced cost, by ordering the PSF Command feature separately for those systems that do not have AFP printers attached.

### Charges:

#### PSF Command feature:

Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge	Monthly License Charge
		\$125
10	\$1,290	
20	2,260	
30	3,230	
40	3,230	

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

5664-198    Print Services Facility/VM  
Version 1 Release 1.1

### Highlights

The following PSF/VM enhancements are provided in the VM Release 4 and the VM Release 5 environments:

- The PSF Command may be ordered separately
- IBM 3812 Model 2 Page Printer supported on SNA and non-SNA IBM 3270 family of controllers
- The PRMODE option is allowed in the System PSF Options file.

The following PSF/VM enhancements are provided only in the VM Release 5 environment:

- Additional separator page options
- Enhanced QUERY ACTIVE response
- Improved PSF/VM performance.

### Statement of Direction

IBM intends to enhance PSF/MVS to provide Advanced Function Printing support for the 3812 Model 2 Pageprinter.

### Description

All announced PSF/VM Release 1.0 functional capabilities apply to this enhancement release.

### PSF Command

With the availability of PSF/VM Release 1.1, the PSF Command, which includes a basic set of fonts, may be separately ordered. This ordering option is provided for those customers who have a requirement to create AFP printer spool files on one VM system, and send the spool files to another system for printing with PSF/VM. Ordering the PSF Command feature separately for those systems that do not have AFP printers attached provides AFP support on multiple VM systems, at a reduced cost.

### 3812 Support

AFP licensed programs that create documents and provide printing resources (page definitions, form definitions, overlays, and page segments) for use with the 3820, may be used to generate printed documents and provide resources for the 3812.

The 3812:

- Does not print in duplex
- Does not support double-byte fonts
- Printer storage available for use with downloaded overlays and page segments is different from the 3820.
- Prints in all four inline directions (across, down, back, and up), but supports only character rotations of 0 and 180 degrees.
- Allows support of multiple 3812s from a single pair of SFCM/3820 PDM virtual machines.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*



- PSF does not download fonts to the 3812; applications are limited to using the fonts available on the 3812 diskette.
- Document Composition Facility users should ensure that the fonts used are available on the 3812 diskette. Refer to the 3812 Font Table in PSF/VM Support for the IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2 (S544-3127) or the PSF/VM System Programmer's Guide (S544-3467).
- PSF does not support the same error recovery or resource management functions on the 3812 as on the 3820.
- Requires RSCS Release 2.2 support.

Because PRMODE option may be put in the systems PSF options file, double-byte support is available as a system option.

#### **PSF/VM Functions Added in VM Release 5 Environment**

- Additional separator page options allow the user to print only the header separator page, only the trailer separator page, both the header and trailer separator pages, or suppress printing of both the header and trailer separator pages
- The QUERY ACTIVE command now provides the file name and file type in the returned response.
- PSF/VM performance is improved, primarily in the area of the 3820 PDM. Performance data will be available from your IBM representative after general availability.

#### **Publications**

The following publications are shipped with the program:

Title	Order Number
PSF User's Programming Guide for VM	S544-3512
PSF System Programmer's Guide for VM	S544-3511
PSF Messages and Codes for VM	S544-3513
PSF/VM Licensed Program Specifications	G544-3514
ABOUT TYPE: IBM-Supplied Fonts for System-Attached Printers	G544-3328
ABOUT TYPE: IBM's Guide for Type Users	G544-3122
PSF Operator's Guide for VM	S544-3522
PSF Data Stream Reference	SH35-0073
AFP Software: General Information	G544-3415
PSF/VM PSF Command Quick Reference	S544-3571
PSF/VM System Programmer's Guide	S544-3467
PSF/VM User's Programming Guide	S544-3466
PSF/VM Operators Guide	S544-3468
PSF/VM PSF Command Quick Reference	S544-3464
PSF/VM Messages and Codes	S544-3465
PSF/VM Support for the IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2	S544-3127
PSF Diagnosis Guide and Reference for VM	LV32-0508
PSF/VM Diagnosis Guide and Reference	LV32-0517
AFP Diagnosis Guide for VM	LV32-0512

#### **Education Support**

PSF/VM education is included in the Advanced Function Printing/Virtual Machine Class (K2504). Refer to the Catalog of IBM Education (G320-1244) for the course description. Call IBM Direct-Education, toll free, at 800-426-2468 for schedule and enrollment information.

#### **Schedule**

Planned availability is December 25, 1987.

#### **Technical Information**

##### **Specified Operating Environment**

**Machine Requirements:** PSF/VM runs as an application under VM and is designed to operate on:

- IBM System/370 Processor models
- IBM 303X Processors
- IBM 308X and 3090 Processors operating in System/370 mode
- IBM 43XX Processors operating in System/370 mode
- IBM 937X Processors.

The IBM 3800 Models 3, 6, and 8 attach directly to the channel.

The 3820 attaches to a channel (as a VTAM channel) or as a communications attachment using an Integrated Communication Adapter or an IBM 3705/3725 Communication Controller using synchronous data link control (SDLC).

The 3812 Model 2 must be attached to one of the following 3270 family of controllers, operating in either SNA (LU1) or non-SNA (DSC) modes:

- 327X (41X and 61X Models) with Configuration Support D - Release 65.1, or higher
- 317X with Configuration Support A - Release 3, or higher
- An integrated controller that supports 3812 IPDS printers.

RSCS supports the controller for the 3812 as channel-attached, and as binary synchronous communication-attached (BSC-attached). RSCS also supports all variations of attachments that are available through ACF/VTAM.

Virtual storage required by PSF/VM is a minimum of 3Mb for the Spool File Conversion Machine (SFCM) subcomponent, 3Mb for the IBM 3800 Print Driver Machine (PDM) subcomponent, and 2Mb for the IBM 3820 PDM subcomponent running in discontinuous shared segment; otherwise IBM recommends a 3Mb machine (the 3820 PDM also supports 3812 printing). One or more PDMs may be supported by a single SFCM.

**Programming Requirements** Prior to installing PSF/VM, the operating system must be at one of the following levels:

- VM/System Product (VM/SP) Release 4.0
- VM/SP High Performance Option (HPO) Release 4.2
- VM/SP Release 5.0, or higher
- VM/SP HPO Release 5.0, or higher
- VM/Extended Architecture System Facility (VM/XA SF) Release 2.0. This operating environment supports only the 3800 Models 3, 6, or 8.

Other requirements for PSF/VM driving a 3820 attachment include:

- Advanced Communication Function/Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (ACF/VTAM) Version 3.1.1 with Group Control System (GCS)
- Advanced Communication Function/Network Control Program (ACF/NCP) Version 3, or later for IBM 3705/3725 Communication Controller attachment.

PSF/VM driving an IBM 3812 attachment:

- ACF/VTAM Version 3.1.1 with GCS (required only for SNA attached 3812s)
- RSCS Version 2.2.

The PSF Command feature will run as standalone, but it must be installed if the Print Services feature is installed. The PSF Command feature and the Print Services feature must be installed if either of the printer attachment features are installed.

**Compatibility:** PSF/VM Release 1.1 will run on the same VM systems as Release 1.0, except VM/SP Release 3 and VM/SP HPO Release 3.6. IBM no longer supports these releases. PSF/VM Release 1.1 is upwardly compatible with Release 1.0.

**Limitations** PSF/VM does not support the 3820 or 3812 in the VM/XA SF Release 2 environment.

**Performance Considerations:** Performance information will be available from your IBM representative after PSF/VM availability.

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for defining a virtual machine for each SFCM and each PDM used. If the operating environment is upgraded, PSF/VM should be reinstalled.

**Installability:** PSF/VM is installable as an optional-feature licensed program using the INSTFPP EXEC. Refer to the VM/SP installation Guide (SC24-5237) for installation procedures using INSTFPP.

**Packaging:** PSF/VM will be distributed on tape. PSF Command, Print Services (SFCM) and basic fonts are shipped together on tape. The 3800 Print Driver Machine and the 3820 Print Driver Machine are each shipped on separate tapes. One complete set of publications is shipped with the PSF Command feature.

#### System Integrity

IBM will accept APARs where the installation of this program causes an exposure to the system integrity of VM. Refer to the IBM Programming Announcement dated October 21, 1981. This program is intended to run authorized only.

#### Security, Auditability, and Control

PSF/VM uses the security and auditability features of VM/SP, VM/SP HPO, and VM/XA SF.

PSF/VM supports the security functions of the 3800 and the 3820, which include the following:

- Page pointers in the page buffer are destroyed after the last copy of the page has been exposed.
- There is no way to read back the contents of the page buffer using channel commands.

- Each time a new page is received from the system, each and every character position of the page buffer is overwritten with either a blank or the new print character, thereby leaving no residual data from prior print pages or applications.
- Electronic overlays, user fonts, and page segments are deleted at normal print-file termination time.
- All disclosed residual resources and resources flagged as not reusable are deleted.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

#### Ordering Information

##### Current Licensees

Current licensees of PSF/VM will receive this update automatically from IBM Software Distribution. This shipment of Release 1 Modification Level 1 is scheduled to be completed by January 15, 1988.

##### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 31, 1987. Orders entered after the availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

At least one Print Services feature and one Printer Attachment feature is required with a PSF Command feature to print on an advanced function printer. Ordering a Printer Attachment feature will require the attachment feature billing and the Print Services feature billing feature numbers.

The PSF Command feature may be ordered separately.

New users of Print Services Facility/VM should specify:

Type: 5664. Model: 198.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify the feature number for a monthly license charge (MLC), or for a graduated One-Time Charge (OTC), specify the feature numbers as applicable and corresponding to the processor group that contains the designated machine for the PSF Command and optionally, the Print Services feature, and one or more of the Printer Attachment features. Also, specify the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature	Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge Feature Number	Monthly License Charge Feature Number
PSF Command	--	--	4480
	10	1551	
	20	1552	
	30	1553	
	40	1554	
Print Services	--	--	4481
	10	1561	

	20	1562	
	30	1563	
	40	1564	
3800			
Attachment	--	--	4788
	10	0141	
	20	0142	
	30	0143	
	40	0144	

3820/3812			
Attachment	--	--	4790
	10	0161	
	20	0162	
	30	0163	
	40	0164	

**Note:** The processor group may be determined by referring to either the Exhibit for IBM Machines (Z125-3901) or the Exhibit for Non-IBM Machines (Z125-3902) that are associated with the Graduated Charges Amendment to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs (Z125-3900).

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and either the feature number for a Monthly License Charge (MLC) or one of the following feature numbers for a graduated One-Time Charge (OTC) that corresponds to the processor group containing the designated machine for PSF Command and, optionally, the Print Services feature, and one or more of the printer attachment features.

Feature	Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge Feature Number	Monthly License Charge Feature Number
PSF Command	--	--	9639
	10	1555	
	20	1556	
	30	1557	
	40	1558	
Print Services	--	--	6622
	10	1565	
	20	1566	
	30	1567	
	40	1568	
3800 Attachment	--	--	6549
	10	0145	
	20	0146	
	30	0147	
	40	0148	
3820/3812 Attachment	--	--	6586
	10	0165	
	20	0166	
	30	0167	
	40	0168	

For DSLO, graduated One-Time Charge, specify feature number 9901 for asset registration.

Ordering a DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location

as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic licensee. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature	Feature Number	Distribution Medium
PSF Command and Print Services	5870	9/1600 bpi Tape
	5871	9/6250 bpi Tape
	5872	3480 Tape Cartridge

**Optional Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number for the desired distribution medium.

Feature	Feature Number	Distribution Medium
3800 Attachment	5850	9/1600 bpi Tape
	5851	9/6250 bpi Tape
	5852	3480 Tape Cartridge
3820/3812 Attachment	5890	9/1600 bpi Tape
	5891	9/6250 bpi Tape
	5892	3480 Tape Cartridge

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material.

Additional copies will be available, for a fee, at general availability. To order, contact your IBM representative.

Title	Order Number	Price/Copy
PSF User's Programming Guide for VM	S544-3512	\$12.00
PSF System Programmer's Guide for VM	S544-3511	13.25
PSF Messages and Codes for VM	S544-3513	11.50
PSF/VM Licensed Program Specifications	G544-3514	.10
ABOUT TYPE: IBM-Supplied Fonts for System-Attached Printers	G544-3328	7.45
ABOUT TYPE: IBM's Guide for Type Users	G544-3122	27.00
PSF Operator's Guide for VM	S544-3522	4.70
PSF Data Stream Reference	SH35-0073	12.50
AFP Software: General Information	G544-3415	1.95
PSF/VM PSF Command Quick Reference	S544-3571	6.05
PSF/VM System Programmer's Guide	S544-3467	12.50
PSF/VM User's Programming Guide	S544-3466	10.75
PSF/VM Operators Guide	S544-3468	3.30
PSF/VM PSF Command Quick Reference	S544-3464	.95
PSF/VM Messages and Codes	S544-3465	9.60
PSF/VM Support for the IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2	S544-3127	2.30

**Licensed Documentation:** The following publications are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material:

The first copy is shipped at no charge to licensees of the basic material. Use the 8XXX feature to order additional copies for a fee.

Title	Order Number	Additional Copies Feature Number	Price/ Copy
PSF Diagnosis Guide and Reference for VM	LV32-0508	8205	\$9.90
PSF/VM Diagnosis Guide and Reference	LV32-0517	8338	8.75
AFP Diagnosis Guide for VM	LV32-0512	8218	6.85

Customers registered for licensed material will receive all updates automatically.

#### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** Yes, for licenses obtained for a graduated One-Time Charge.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used, except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the VPA Exhibit for Graduated Charges. Print Services Facility/VM (5664-198) is in Categories G13, H13, J13, and K13. The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the graduated One-Time Charge option:

Discount				
Categories by Processor Group				
Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Group 10 Category G13	Group 20 Category H13	Group 30 Category J13	Group 40 Category K13
3	20%	10%	10%	10%
5	25%	15%	15%	15%
10	30%	20%	20%	20%
20	35%	25%	25%	25%

The VPA category specified must correspond to the processor group applicable to the machines on which the programs will run.

Only programs with the same category (such as K13) may be aggregated to determine the applicable discount.

Processor group upgrades are not eligible for volume discounting.

Volume discounting applies to basic and DSLO One-Time Charge licenses.

**Warranted:** Basic license - Yes. DSLO - Not applicable.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: No. This licensed program will be available without source licensed program materials. It will be available in object code.

**Testing Period:** Basic license - Two months. DSLO - Not applicable.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available, until discontinued by IBM upon six months' written notice.

Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, for DSLO licenses will be provided only through the customer location designated for the basic license.

#### Charges

Program Name	Processor Group	Basic Graduated One-Time Charge	DSLO Graduated One-Time Charge	Basic Monthly License Charge	DSLO Monthly License Charge
PSF Command	10	\$ 1,290	\$ 965	\$125	\$ 95
	20	2,260	1,695		
	30	3,230	2,420		
	40	3,230	2,420		
Print Services	10	2,400	1,800	230	172
	20	4,200	3,150		
	30	6,000	4,500		
	40	6,000	4,500		
3800 Attachment Feature	10	5,350	4,010	510	383
	20	9,360	7,020		
	30	13,375	10,030		
	40	13,375	10,030		
3820/3812 Attachment Feature	10	1,600	1,200	200	150
	20	2,800	2,100		
	30	4,000	3,000		
	40	4,000	3,000		

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated One-Time Charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as a optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a One-Time Charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.

**Graduated Charges:** The applicable, graduated One-Time Charge will be based upon the processor group of the designated machine on which the licensed program is licensed for use. The charge for processor group

upgrades will be the difference in the current charges between the two groups. Licenses for which the customer has paid a graduated One-Time Charge may be redesignated to a processor in the same processor group or a lower processor group. There will be no adjustment or refund for processor group downgrades.

**Program Upgrade Charge:** The program upgrade charge applies to orders for the new version when it replaces a prior version that was obtained for a One-Time Charge, and is discontinued upon installation of the new version. If the prior version is not discontinued, the full, One-Time Charge applies to the new version.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## **Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed Monotype Garamond Fonts for Advanced Function Printing One-Time Charge**

Sonoran Sans Serif<sup>1</sup> Expanded and Condensed and Monotype Garamond<sup>2</sup> licensed programs are designed for use on 240 dots-per-inch, nonimpact printers supported by Advanced Function Printing licensed programs. Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed, Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded, and Monotype Garamond provide proportionally spaced typographic fonts.

### **Charges:**

<b>Program Number</b>	<b>One-Time Charge</b>
<b>5771-AFL</b>	<b>\$ 900</b>
<b>5771-AFN</b>	<b>800</b>
<b>5771-AFK</b>	<b>1,000</b>

**Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987**

<sup>1</sup> Sonoran Sans Serif is a functional equivalent to Monotype Arial.

<sup>2</sup> Trademark of The Monotype Corporation, plc.

<b>5771-AFL</b>	<b>Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed</b>
<b>5771-AFN</b>	<b>Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded</b>
<b>5771-AFK</b>	<b>Monotype Garamond</b>

### **Marketing Information**

#### **Marketing Channels**

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### **Marketing Strategy**

These licensed programs should be marketed to customers who wish to enrich their 240 dots-per-inch font library. Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded and Condensed fonts add versatility to the Sonoran Sans Serif family with additional typestyles that may be used to produce more varied and aesthetically pleasing print results. The Monotype Garamond family provides traditional serif design fonts which are widely used in advertising and promotional material. Monotype Garamond fonts are also a popular choice for bookfaces and text, and provide an artistic flair for letterhead, business card, and formal invitation applications.

#### **Marketing Focus**

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5771-(AFL, AFN or AFK)" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

### **Marketing Support**

Marketing support is available from the Boulder National Marketing Center by sending a note to HELP38XX at BLDVM2.

### **HONE Information**

Proposal material will be available through HONE on December 15, 1987.

The configuration aid, CFPROGS, will be available through HONE on December 15, 1987, and will be available to eligible INFOExpress customers. The fast path name is CFPROGS.

### **Installation Information**

#### **Installation Support**

Installation and technical support is provided by National Technical Support-Dallas, National Marketing and Technical Support Center, Irving, or by National Technical Support-Large Systems, Gaithersburg, MD.

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialist for technical marketing assistance. System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSystem and HONE EQUAL. System engineers should research their questions in INFOSystem using the search word "5771-XXX", and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

## **Administrative Information**

### **Ordering Information**

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

### **Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed Monotype Garamond Fonts for Advanced Function Printing One-Time Charge

Sonoran Sans Serif<sup>1</sup> Expanded and Condensed and Monotype Garamond<sup>2</sup> licensed programs are designed for use on 240 dots-per-inch, nonimpact printers supported by Advanced Function Printing licensed programs. Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed, Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded, and Monotype Garamond provide proportionally spaced typographic fonts.

### Charges:

Program Number	One-Time Charge
5771-AFL	\$ 900
5771-AFN	800
5771-AFK	1,000

Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987

<sup>1</sup> Sonoran Sans Serif is a functional equivalent to Monotype Arial.

<sup>2</sup> Trademark of The Monotype Corporation, plc.

5771-AFL	Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed
5771-AFN	Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded
5771-AFK	Monotype Garamond

<sup>1</sup> Sonoran Sans Serif is a functional equivalent to Monotype Arial.

<sup>2</sup> Monotype Garamond is a trademark of The Monotype Corporation, plc.

### Highlights

- Enhances the 240 dots-per-inch typographic font library
- Provides five additional typefaces in 14 point sizes for the Sonoran Sans Serif family (a total of 70 fonts)
- Introduces the Monotype Garamond family with four typefaces in 14 point sizes (a total of 56 fonts).

### Description

Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed (5771-AFL) provides typographic fonts in roman medium condensed, roman bold condensed, and italic medium condensed. Each typeface has 14 point sizes (6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, and 36). There are 42 fonts in the program.

Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded (5771-AFN) provides typographic fonts in roman medium expanded and roman bold expanded. Each typeface has 14 point sizes (6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, and 36). There are 28 fonts in the program.

Monotype Garamond (5771-AFK) provides typographic fonts in roman medium, roman bold, italic medium, and italic bold. Each typeface has 14 point sizes (6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, and 36). There are 56 fonts in the program.

These licensed programs are available in two data formats. One format contains font-object data for printing on the IBM 3820 Page Printer in MVS, VM, and VSE system environments, IBM 3800 Model 3, 6, or 8 in the VM system environment, and the IBM 3812 Pageprinter using the 3812 VM Support Program Program Offering (5798-DTE) and bisynchronous communications (feature number 3060). The other format contains 3800 object data for printing on the 3800 Model 3, 6, or 8 in MVS and VSE systems environments and font source data for use with the Print Management Facility, or its equivalent, in MVS and VM system environments.

### Publications

Licensed Program Specifications (G544-3188) is shipped with the program.

Additional copies will be available immediately after availability.

The Program Directory shipped with the licensed program contains additional descriptive and character-display information.

### Schedule

Planned general availability is December 18, 1987.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** An IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Model 3, 6 or 8, IBM 3820 Page Printer, or an IBM 3812 Pageprinter.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*



Storage Requirements: Approximate DASD storage (Kb) required for these licensed programs is as follows:

	Font Object	3800 Object	Source
Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed	3560	7834	7834
Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded	2849	7121	6409
Monotype Garamond	4273	11394	9258

**Programming Requirements:** Print Service Facility/MVS (5665-275), Print Services Facility/VSE (5666-319), or Print Services Facility/VM (5664-198) is required to print these fonts on the IBM 3800 Printing Subsystem Model 3, 6, or 8 and IBM 3820 Page Printer. The IBM 3812 Pageprinter requires the 3812 VM Support Program Offering (5798-DTE) and bisynchronous communications (feature number 3060).

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** The customer is responsible for providing adequate DASD storage capacity to hold the fonts and using system utilities to load fonts to disk.

**Installability:** Standard system file-load utilities are used to load the fonts to disk.

**Packaging:** These licensed programs will be packaged on tape, and will be available in either 9/1600 bpi, 9/6250 bpi, or 3480 cartridge format. Each package will also contain a single copy of the Licensed Program Specification (G544-3188) and the Program Directory.

#### System Integrity

IBM will accept APARs where the installation of these licensed programs causes an exposure to the system integrity of MVS. Refer to the IBM Programming Announcement dated October 21, 1981. This program is intended to run unauthorized.

#### Security, Auditability, and Control

Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed, Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded, and Monotype Garamond fonts use the security and auditability features of Print Service Facility/MVS, Print Service Facility/VSE, or Print Service Facility/VM products.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

#### Ordering Information

##### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 25, 1987. Orders entered after the availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users should specify:

Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed	Type: 5771.	Model: AFL.
Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded	Type: 5771.	Model: AFN.
Monotype Garamond	Type: 5771.	Model: AFK.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify one of the following One-Time Charge (OTC) feature numbers:

Program Name	Program Number	Basic OTC Feature Number
Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed	5771-AFL	4551
Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded	5771-AFN	4552
Monotype Garamond	5771-AFK	4550

Also, specify the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium	Environment
5850	9/1600 bpi	MVS/VM/VSE Object
5851	9/6250 bpi	MVS/VM/VSE Object
5852	3480 Tape Cartridge	MVS/VM/VSE Object

**Optional Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number for the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium	Environment
5860	9/1600 bpi	MVS/VM Source MVS/VSE 3800 Object
5861	9/6250 bpi	MVS/VM Source MVS/VSE 3800 Object
5862	3480 Tape Cartridge	MVS/VM Source MVS/VSE 3800 Object

**Unlicensed Documentation** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publication are supplied, automatically, with the basic machine-readable material.

Title	Order Number
Licensed Program Specification	G544-3188

Additional copies will be available, for a fee, at general availability. To order, contact your IBM representative.

#### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Installation License Applies:** Yes.

**Location License Applies:** No.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Warranted:** Yes.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: Restricted materials are not applicable to fonts.

**Testing Period:** One month.

**Program Services:** Central Service will be available until discontinued by IBM upon six months' written notice. Completed APARs should be mailed to the following address:

IBM Corporation  
6300 Diagonal Highway  
53S/025-2  
Boulder, Colorado 80301-9191

#### **Charges**

Program Name	One-Time Charge
Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed	\$ 900
Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded	800
Monotype Garamond	1,000

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program Availability and Additional Function

The IBM Local Area Network (LAN) Asynchronous Connection Server Program operates in a dedicated IBM Personal Computer or IBM Personal System/2™ attached to a LAN that contains one-to-four IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport, or IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2™ Communication Adapters.

It allows LAN-attached Personal Computers and Personal System/2s to access ASCII host computers and other asynchronous devices connected to the servers' communication adapters. ASCII terminals, Personal Computers, and Personal System/2s that dial into, or are directly connected to the server can access ASCII host computers, and other asynchronous devices connected to any outgoing line on any server on the LAN. Information from incoming Personal Computers and Personal System/2s can be directed to LAN-attached devices. The Server may be connected to an IBM Token-Ring Network, or a broadband IBM PC Network.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-123, dated April 2, 1987; IBM Product Announcement 187-182, dated October 20, 1987.

### Charges:

Program Number	One-Time Charge
83X9132	\$1,200
83X9135	\$1,155

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

A PTF for the server component of the code (part number 83X9132) to be designated as Version 1.01, providing performance enhancements will be available February 19, 1988.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

83X9132	IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program
83X9135	AL IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- Authorized IBM PC Dealers

- Authorized IBM Value-Added Dealers

### Marketing Action Required

Register the customer's service coordinator by using the workstation enrollment option of the HONE INFOSystem CAC/ISC registration function (enter 'FE Entitlement Only' and the standard contract number, 37661, on the customer information panel). Refer to IBM Marketing Announcement 385-166, dated December 17, 1985, for additional information.

### Marketing Support

Information on LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program performance as it pertains to Personal Computers and Personal System/2s used as a server is available under HONE Technical Information, Flashes subsection, using the keyword, <LANACS>.

### Marketing Focus

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all programs by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5871-AAA" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

**Demonstrations:** The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program is available for demonstrations at the Research Triangle Park Market Support Center, Raleigh, NC.

### HONE Information

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact their branch and area specialists for technical marketing assistance. System engineers are provided installation and technical support through HONE INFOSystem and HONE EQUAL. System engineers should research their questions in INFOSystem using the search word <LANACS> with branch specialists, and in publications before submitting an EQUAL question.

**Direct Customer Support:** Eligible customers may obtain installation and usage assistance from the Workstation Customer Assistance Center through ASKINFO. Information on customer eligibility and registration procedures is available through HONE SUPPORTINFO, search words PC CUSTOMER DIRECT ELIGIBILITY.

## Administrative Information

Additional licenses for the IBM LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program may be ordered under a VPA only, not under a QDA.

## Volume Discount

**Special Bid Transition:** For commercial and state and local-government customers who have special bid contracts in effect that meet the following criteria (including the U.S. portion of IVPAs), the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program will be automatically added to the special bid category with the same program aggregation as the category to which the program was added to the Exhibit Personal Computer Licensed Programs No. 3580 (QDA Category A under 5871-AAA) and Category A of the standard VPA Exhibits, PCLP, and PCLE. Additional licenses are available only to customers who have had their special bid contracts revised based upon the June 16, 1987 VPA announcement.

## Criteria

- The special bid includes a commitment to the category to which the program is being added.

## Administrative Action Required

Branch office administration must complete the EZFORM CPSRCORR and submit it to Asset Management, Rockville, MD to have the special bid contract file updated to reflect this announcement.

If a customer requests it, an updated special bid contract will be available through the appropriate ISG Contract Practices department in Atlanta or White Plains at the time the revised VPA Exhibit is available. Interim to the availability of the revised Eligible Program List, the programs may be added to the applicable category in the space provided on the Eligible Program List.

For customers who did not previously make a transition from their existing special bid contracts to a special bid contract based upon the June 16, 1987 VPA announcement, the VPA and Special Bid Transition Plan guidelines in Marketing Announcement 387-097, dated June 16, 1987, will apply.

**Customer Notification:** Those customers who have a special bid that is automatically updated to include the announced program must be notified within 10 days of this announcement, and such notification must be documented with a locally initiated control list indicating the date of notification and the name of the customer executive notified. A branch-prepared Notice should be sent. If a Notice to IBM Customers is included with this announcement, it should not be used since it only applies to VPA customers who have the standard VPA and VPA Exhibit in effect, and not special bid customers.

## Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the general availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 25, 1987. To order, select the order type and enter the appropriate order type number and feature numbers. Multiple features, and any quantity of a feature may be entered per order type.

**Program Package:** Program diskette with documentation.

Order Type Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Media
5871-AAA	8391	IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program	Dual

**Additional Licenses:** Applies when the customer has a program package and orders an additional license to copy the program diskette. The quantity must be five or more ordered under a VPA and under one customer number. Orders will be billed on a single invoice. Branch office administration should not enter orders for fewer than the minimum order quantity.

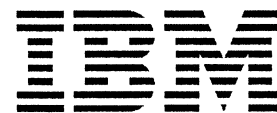
Order Type Number	Feature Number	Program Name
5872-AAA	8335	AL IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are eligible for volume discounting. For information regarding VPA registration and processing, refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPFL5.

## Sponsoring Executive

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program Availability and Additional Function

The IBM Local Area Network (LAN) Asynchronous Connection Server Program operates in a dedicated IBM Personal Computer or IBM Personal System/2™ attached to a LAN that contains one-to-four IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport, or IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2™ Communication Adapters.

It allows LAN-attached Personal Computers and Personal System/2s to access ASCII host computers and other asynchronous devices connected to the servers' communication adapters. ASCII terminals, Personal Computers, and Personal System/2s that dial into, or are directly connected to the server can access ASCII host computers, and other asynchronous devices connected to any outgoing line on any server on the LAN. Information from incoming Personal Computers and Personal System/2s can be directed to LAN-attached devices. The Server may be connected to an IBM Token-Ring Network, or a broadband IBM PC Network.

Reference: IBM Programming Announcement 287-123, dated April 2, 1987; IBM Product Announcement 187-182, dated October 20, 1987.

### Charges:

Program Number	One-Time Charge
83X9132	\$1,200
83X9135	\$1,155

Planned Availability Date: December 25, 1987

A PTF for the server component of the code (part number 83X9132) to be designated as Version 1.01, providing performance enhancements will be available February 19, 1988.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

83X9132	IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program
83X9135	AL IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program

### Highlights

The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program supports the following:

- Personal Computers and Personal System/2s attached to a LAN and connecting to a server, or standalone and connecting to the server, and standalone IBM 3101, 3151, 3161, 3162, 3163, and 3164 ASCII Terminals connecting to a server can access:
  - ASCII host computers, including the IBM RT™ PC
  - IBM EBCDIC hosts through an IBM 3174, 7171, and 3708 Protocol Converter
  - Other terminal servers for access to Ethernet and other LANs
  - AT command set modems to dial out, or other asynchronous devices that can attach to the communication adapters, EIA RS-232 Interface of any server on the network.
- Direct-connect, leased-line, and dial-out at speeds of up to 19.2K bps on 32 Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapter lines.
- Serial communication adapters, in addition to the IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapters (not to exceed 32 lines)
- The IBM Asynchronous Communications Server Program Protocol Interface and the Enhanced BIOS Interface

### Description

The IBM LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program operates in a dedicated IBM Personal Computer XT, AT®, Industrial AT, XT/286, and the IBM Personal System/2 Model 30, and can contain between one and four Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Asynchronous Communication Adapter cards. Each card has four asynchronous communication adapter lines. When operating in Personal System/2 Models 50, 60, and 80, the server can contain one-to-four Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2 adapter cards. Expansion features allow eight lines per card. The server can operate on a Token-Ring Network, or a broadband PC Network, with the appropriate adapter cards.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

## **LAN Attachment**

A server can make connections from a LAN to an asynchronous line, and from an asynchronous line to a LAN. In the first phase of operation, the server receives connection requests from either LAN devices, incoming devices, or other servers on behalf of standalone devices. Once the connection request is honored, the server operates in a transparent information-passing mode. Server outgoing asynchronous lines can be shared by LAN-attached devices or incoming devices that request connections to them. If more than one outgoing line is defined for the same ASCII host, protocol converter, asynchronous leased line, or other asynchronous device, the server provides contention management for the first available line for that device. If more than one server is defined to contain lines to the same asynchronous device, the NETBIOS mechanism provides contention management to the first server that has an available line.

Incoming lines may be directly connected, a leased line, or dial in. If autoanswer modems or telephone type rotaries are used, they provide the contention management for the incoming lines.

Any server can have lines defined to be incoming or outgoing in the same server. The Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapter cards may be configured for any line to be either outgoing, or incoming on the same card. Serial/Parallel Adapter cards may also be used for incoming or outgoing traffic.

The RS-232 CCITT V.24 Interface allows attachment of non-IBM equipment. Such attachment is allowed under the provisions of the Multiple Supplier Systems Bulletin.

### **Personal Computers, Personal System/2, and ASCII Terminals**

A Personal Computer or Personal System/2 attached to a LAN or connected to an asynchronous line on a server that is communicating with an asynchronous device, must be operating with an emulator/application code that is compatible with its communications partner. The ASCII terminals must also be compatible with the host communication partner. Emulation/application programs operating in Personal Computers or Personal System/2s and ASCII terminals must be supported by any of the protocol conversion devices connected to a server.

LAN-attached workstations can request outgoing connections to asynchronous devices attached to the asynchronous lines of any server. Incoming standalone ASCII terminals, Personal Computers, or Personal System/2s can select the system resource desired through a customer-generated menu presented by the server, or through a service request name accepted by the server. Password protection is an optional provision. The server, on behalf of asynchronous devices dialing in, or directly connected to the server asynchronous lines can request a connection to any outgoing defined asynchronous line whether on the same server or on any server on the network, or to a device on the network.

### **Host Access**

IBM 3174 Models 1L, 1R, 2R, 3R, 51R, and 52R may be attached to the RS-232 ports of an incoming defined server. When attached to the incoming defined server, the 3174 Asynchronous Emulation Adapter feature allows supported IBM 3270 terminals to be protocol converted to VT100<sup>1</sup>, and supported ASCII terminals to be passed through the 3174 to the server for access to ASCII host

computers. 3174 Models 1L, 1R, 2R, 3R, 51R, and 52R may also be attached to the RS-232 ports of an outgoing defined server. With this attachment, the Asynchronous Emulation Adapter feature allows ASCII datastreams to be protocol converted to 3270 datastreams for access to an IBM host. Response times in 3174/server configurations is dependent upon many variables, including the number and types of terminals attached to the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program and the 3174, and the transaction rates and transmission speeds used. Flow control must be used on asynchronous links to control host and terminal pacing.

Support for 3174 attachment to the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program will be effective June 30, 1988.

Standalone Personal Computers and Personal System/2s can request a connection to an IBM 3708, and with the use of IBM PC/Host File Transfer and Terminal Emulation Program, can request bidirectional file transfer with an IBM VM host.

### **Access to Other LANs**

When using an outgoing line on the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server to a terminal server that is attached to another LAN such as Ethernet, the terminal server allows connections to devices attached to that LAN. As long as the terminal server does the routing on the other LAN, the Personal Computer or Personal System/2 located on an IBM LAN operating in the VT100 mode can communicate with the ASCII hosts on the other LAN, whether they are UNIX<sup>2</sup> or VAX<sup>1</sup> hosts.

The server asynchronous line side operates in character mode, and the network side operates in packet mode. The server allows ASCII terminals and Personal Computer/Personal System/2s emulating ASCII terminals to operate in character/full duplex mode with ASCII host computers. Files transferred through the server can be sent in packets of characters, bidirectionally, from the network side to the asynchronous line side.

<sup>1</sup> Trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

<sup>2</sup> Registered trademark of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company.

### **Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2**

The server program consists of two tasks, one that operates on the host Personal Computers and Personal System/2s and another that operates in the Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapter card which manages the transmission, receipt, and buffering of information on the adapter. The buffering mechanism in the adapter task and the transfer mechanism to the host Personal Computer or Personal System/2 allows the server to achieve operation of all Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 lines at 19.2K bps.

### **Server Status/Error Information**

The status of server connections, which devices are using which lines, traffic flow direction, and the state of the connection are indicated on the server display monitor. A LAN workstation, using one of the supported application programs, may be centrally located and may obtain status information from any server on the LAN. A remote ASCII terminal, Personal Computer, or Personal System/2 may also be used to dial into an asynchronous line on the server and obtain server status.

The server also captures error information, logs all operating events, and traces events. Logging operating events and tracing information are usually used in problem determination, and are not recommended for normal operation. Error information, the event log, and trace information may be sent to any valid IBM Personal Computer Disk Operating System (DOS) device name. If sent to the server console, this information pre-empts the use of the console to display status. This information may be sent to a DOS file, printer, or communications adapter port for viewing at a remote location.

### **Programming Interfaces**

The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program is designed to operate with the IBM Asynchronous Communications Server Program Protocol (ACSI) and the Enhanced BIOS Interfaces.

These interfaces allow:

- Modem connection, and direct (through a null modem) connections to asynchronous devices on any server's outgoing lines.
- Bidirectional file transfer between Personal Computers and Personal System/2s which may be attached to a LAN, a standalone device, or both.
- Xmodem and/or proprietary checking schemes for file transfer.
- LAN application programs to change the speed and parity, and recognize control information (XON/XOFF). Such a change will override the line parameters set in the servers configuration file.
- Direct connection of the end-user's communication application to the Data Terminal Interface (DTI), the Data Communication Module (DCM), and the Rolmphone 244 Interfaces for the ROLM 8000 and 9000 CBXs, and the IBM 9750 Business Communications System.

When connected, the end-user may interact with the switch to request a connection to the switch resources. The Rolmphone 244 Interface can only be used with serial communication adapters.

**Asynchronous Communications Server Program Protocol Interface (ACSI):** ACSI is defined in IBM Personal Computer Seminar Proceedings Volume 3 Number 4 (G320-0323), dated Oct. 15, 1985, and may be obtained from:

IBM Corporation  
Editor, IBM Personal Computer Seminar Proceedings  
P.O. Box 1328  
Boca Raton, Florida

With ACSI, the server allows LAN workstation application programs to:

- Interchange operations with the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server or an IBM Asynchronous Communications Server
- Request that the server dial destinations by issuing a name (target) to define the desired destination.
- Issue telephone numbers to the server.
  - The server uses the AT Command set to dial the associated telephone number.
- Operate the PFS Access and Crosstalk<sup>4</sup> LAN applications in conjunction with the IBM PC LAN

Program Redirector and the IBM PC 3270 Emulation Program Version 3.

The IBM 3270 Emulation Memory Management Enhancement may also be used to maintain 3270-session connectivity when the 3270 Emulation Program is swapped out. This combination allows up to four IBM EBCDIC host sessions and the return to the DOS prompt.

PFS Access Version CP.04<sup>3</sup> and Crosstalk XVI<sup>4</sup> Network Version 3.16<sup>4</sup>, have been written to ASCII. These software packages operate in Personal Computers and Personal System/2s and allow access to some or all defined functions when communicating to the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program, or the Asynchronous Communications Server Program.

<sup>3</sup> Trademark of the Software Publishing Corporation. Copyright of the Software Publishing Corporation.

<sup>4</sup> Registered trademark of Digital Communications Associates, Inc. Copyright of Digital Communications Associates, Inc.

**Enhanced BIOS Interface:** The Enhanced BIOS Interface, described in the IBM LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program Installation and Operation guide, allows:

- Installation of additional Interrupts for asynchronous adapter support which allows operation in a buffered mode, and the use of four virtual COM ports on LAN-attached Personal Computer/Personal System/2s.
- Modem control when dialing. The extended AT Command set allows a greater variety of modems to be used.
- User applications to manipulate modem DTR and RTS leads.
- Programs written to the EBI and not interfering with the interrupts associated with the EBI, IBM PC LAN Program Redirector function, IBM PC 3270 Emulation Program Version 3, and the IBM 3270 Emulation Memory Management Enhancement which allows up to four asynchronous sessions and up to four EBCDIC host sessions, and the return to the DOS prompt.
- The use of DOS commands (COPY, PRINT, MODE, CTTY) between Personal Computers/Personal System/2s connected through the server.
  - With the enhanced BIOS Interface, the DOS CTTY command may be used to designate an auxiliary device as the standard input/output device. A remote ASCII terminal, Personal Computer/Personal System/2 operating Yterm\*, or an equivalent capability can dial into the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program, be connected to a LAN-attached Personal Computer/Personal System/2, and operate as a remote console. Commands issued from the keyboard of the remote console will cause the LAN-attached Personal Computer/Personal System/2 to function. The remote console can operate applications that use DOS standard input and output devices. The remote ASCII terminal or Personal Computer/Personal System/2 console receives all information written to the LAN-attached Personal Computer/Personal System/2 screen. Results from applications that do not use the standard output device and write to a memory buffer cannot be viewed at the remote location. If the programs can store the results, they may then

be transferred, as a file, to the remote console Personal Computer/Personal System/2.

\* Copyright of Yale University.

*The descriptions of software programs in the Programming Interfaces section is provided for the convenience of customers and is not an endorsement by IBM or a guarantee that the programs will work or satisfy particular customer requirements. Other companies' or organizations' programs may work as well. Users are responsible for deciding whether these or other programs will satisfy their needs. Customers should contact the companies or organizations offering the software to obtain further information.*

- The mode and print commands may be used to change a LAN-attached Personal Computer/Personal System/2 printer port, to the COM port and to send print information to a server-attached printer.

Yterm, another communication software package, is written to the Enhanced BIOS Interface and allows access to these defined functions when operating in an end-user Personal Computer/Personal System/2.

The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program offering consists of a component that operates in the server and the enhanced BIOS Interface programs which are required to be in the end-user Personal Computer/Personal System/2 when a communication software package written to the BIOS Interface is used to access these defined functions. A second component may be used on up to 32 end-user Personal Computers/Personal System/2s operating concurrently with the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program.

#### **Modem Attachment to PBX or Public Switched Network**

Modems may be connected in the leased-line mode at speeds of up to 19.2K bps. The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server may also be modem attached to any PBX or Public Switched Network. In this case the server may use an IBM 5841 Modem, IBM 5842 2400 bps modem, or AT command-set compatible modems to establish the communication path. LAN applications that use either interface have been tested to operate at 9.6K bps with AT command set modems. The Enhanced BIOS Interface which allows transmission of enhanced AT command sets, has been tested to operate at 19.2K bps through the Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapters with modems capable of that speed.

#### **Coexistence**

The LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program can coexist on the same IBM Token-Ring Network or a broadband IBM PC Network as other application programs, such as the IBM PC Network 3270 Emulation Program Gateway, and may be intermixed on the same LAN with Asynchronous Communications Servers (P/N 1642003) (See IBM Programming Announcement 285-401, dated October 15, 1985). LAN workstations operating application programs written to the ACSI can communicate through either server.

The IBM LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program can also coexist on the IBM Token-Ring Network, and operate in conjunction with:

- IBM Token-Ring Network Bridge Program (6403831) or IBM Token-Ring Network Bridge Program Version 1.1 (83X7860).
- The IBM Network Interconnect Program (6467036)
- IBM Token-Ring Network Manager (6476046) Version 1.1 (6476107) or IBM Local Area Network Manager (83X9100).

#### **Schedule**

Planned general availability is December 25, 1987

#### **Technical Information**

##### **Specified Operating Environment**

**Machine Requirements:** Operating the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program requires a dedicated IBM Personal Computer or Personal System/2. The server can be operated with one 360Kb/740Kb/1.4Mb diskette, no printer, a display/adaptor, and 256Kb of memory. Because of power supply considerations in various models that limit the number of Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapters, the maximum machine configuration of a server may only be, as follows:

- 640Kb memory
- Diskette adapter.
- Two diskettes, or one diskette and one hard drive.
- Monochrome or color display.
- IBM Local Area Network Adapters, one only. However, two PC Network Adapters may be used in the IBM PC/AT or Industrial AT, but only outgoing server ports for the EBI are supported in this case.
- Printer adapter.

The following combinations of Serial/Parallel, IBM Personal System/2 Dual Asynchronous Adapter/A, IBM Personal System/2 Multi-Protocol Adapter/A serial communication adapters, and IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 adapters may be used on the IBM Personal Computer/Personal System/2. The communication adapter on the planar board and the other adapter cards may be used but never more than two COM ports may be used. In the following, the PC XT/370 and PC AT/370 are not supported.

- IBM Personal Computer XT, maximum capability is one IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Adapter, eight communication lines.
- IBM Personal System/2 Model 30, maximum capability is nine communication adapter lines.
  - Any combination of IBM Serial/Parallel adapter cards, and one IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Communication Adapter card, not to exceed nine communication adapter ports.
- IBM Personal Computer XT/286 (5162), maximum capability is 24 communication adapter lines.
  - Any combination of IBM Serial/Parallel adapter cards, or up to three Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Communication Adapter cards, not to exceed three chassis slots, and 24 communication adapter lines.
- IBM Personal Computer AT (5170), or IBM Personal Industrial Computer AT (7531/7532) maximum capability is 32 communication adapter lines.



- Any combination of IBM Serial/Parallel adapter cards or up to four Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Communication Adapter cards, not to exceed five chassis slots, and 32 communication adapter lines.
- IBM Personal System/2 Model 50, maximum capability is 17 communication adapter ports.
  - Any combination of IBM Personal System/2 Multi-Protocol Adapter/A, and IBM Personal System/2 Dual Asynchronous Adapter/A cards, and up to two Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2 Communication Adapter cards, not to exceed two chassis slots, and 17 communication adapter ports.
- IBM Personal System/2 Model 60 or Model 80, maximum capability is 32 communication adapter ports.
  - Any combination of IBM Personal System/2 Multi-Protocol Adapter/A, and IBM Personal System/2 Dual Asynchronous Adapter/A cards, and up to four Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2 Communication Adapter cards, not to exceed five chassis slots, and 32 communication adapter ports.

The following LAN adapters may be in the server when operating the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program. The quantities were indicated in the above maximum configurations.

- IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter, (part number 6339100, feature number 3391), IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter II (part number 67X0438, feature number 5063), or IBM Token-Ring Network Adapter/A (part number 69X8138, feature number 4790).
  - IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter Cable (part number 6339098, feature code 3390), or
  - Type 3 Media Filter for the Type 3 Cable available from IBM Authorized Distributors.
- IBM PC Network Adapter (part number 6450213, feature number 0213), IBM PC Network Adapter II (feature number 1220, part number 1501220), or IBM PC Network Adapter II/A (feature number 1222, part number 1501222)

One-to-four of the full eight line Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport or Multiport/2 Communication Adapter cards may be in the server when operating the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program. The quantity per server is indicated in the specific configurations defined above.

- IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport, 128Kb, communication adapter cards:
  - For first four ports:
    - Part number 00F5525 feature number 6240 with 5-1/4-inch diskette.
    - Part number 00F5527 feature number 6241 with 3-1/2-inch diskette.
  - For next four ports:
    - Part number 00F5530, feature number 6245.
  - IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport cable terminated in eight EIA RS-232C/CCITT V.24 connectors (part number 00F5531, feature number 6246).

- IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2, 512Kb, communication adapter cards:
  - For base card:
    - Part number 09F1897, feature number 6263, with 5-1/4-inch and 3-1/2-inch diskettes.
  - For eight RS-232 Ports:
    - Part number 09F1952, feature number 6265
  - IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport cable terminated in eight EIA RS-232C/CCITT V.24 connectors (part number 00F5531, feature number 6246).

One-to-two of the IBM Serial/Parallel Adapter cards may be in the server when operating the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program in Personal Computer AT, Industrial Computer AT, Personal Computer XT/286, or Personal System/2 Model 30. One Personal System/2 Dual Asynchronous Adapter/A, or up to two Personal System/2 Multi-Protocol Adapter/As may be resident when operating the LAN Asynchronous Connection Server Program in a Personal System/2 Models 50, 60, or 80. The quantity per server is indicated in the specific configurations defined above. The Serial Communication adapters are not supported above 9.6K bps.

- The IBM Serial/Parallel Adapter card (part number 6450215, feature number 0215)
  - IBM Serial Adapter Cable, (feature number 0217, part number 6450217)
  - IBM Serial Adapter Connector, (feature number 0242, part number 6450242)
- The IBM Personal System/2 Multi-Protocol Adapter/A card (part number 6450348), feature number 3042)
- The IBM Personal System/2 Dual Asynchronous Adapter/A card (part number 6450347, feature number 3033).

#### **Programming Requirements:**

- IBM Disk Operating System Version 3.30 (6280060)
- IBM Local Area Network Support Program (83X7873):
  - When operating on a Token-Ring Network.
  - When operating on a broadband PC Network that is using the 802.2 Interface supported by the IBM Local Area Network Support Program.
- The IBM PC Network Protocol Driver (6280061):
  - When the server is using a PC Network Adapter II or IBM PC Network Adapter II/A, and is attached to a broadband PC Network that is operating with the PC Network original protocol.
- IBM Realtime Control Program DOS Support (5669-177) Version 1.03, when the server is operating with an IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport Adapter. One per server.
- IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor DOS Support Version 1 (5686-001) when operating with an IBM Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport/2 adapter. One per server.

See IBM Programming Announcement 287-415, dated October 20, 1987.

**Performance Considerations:** All Realtime Interface Co-Processor Multiport and Multiport/2 ports on the Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server may be configured for 19.2K bps, and, with flow control, are able to operate without data loss.

However, if many server users are performing file transfers concurrently between any two devices, the throughput-per-port will diminish, as a function of the number of users doing so.

#### Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the general availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 25, 1987.

To order the programs in this announcement, specify the program name, order type, quantity and media. The order types are:

Program Package -- Program diskette with documentation.

Additional Licenses -- Quantity must be five or more ordered under a VPA.

#### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement. A copy of the agreement is included in the program package.

The IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program consists of two components. The first component operates on the dedicated server IBM Personal Computer XT, IBM Personal Computer XT/286, IBM Personal Computer AT, IBM Industrial Computer AT 7531/7532, or IBM Personal System/2 Models 30, 50, 60, and 80.

The second component operates in a end-user IBM Personal Computer/Personal System/2 in conjunction with the first component. The second component may be used on up to 32 end-user IBM Personal Computers/Personal System/2s concurrently operating with the first component.

Both components are subject to the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement.

**Limited Warranty:** Program Package - Additional Licenses: Yes. Media: Three months.

**Program Services:** Central Service, through the IBM Support Center, will be available until June 30, 1989. The statement of service included in the program package describes this service.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the terms and conditions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) and the Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs or the Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals. The programs in this announcement are included in the Eligible Program List for Personal Computer Programs. They may be added to the applicable category in the space provided on the Eligible Program List. Program Packages are included in Category A under 5871-AAA. Additional Licenses are

available only under the VPA and are included in Category A under 5872-AAA.

**Testing Period:** Program Packages: Two months for up to three copies of each eligible program ordered under a VPA Addendum. Additional Licenses: Not applicable.

**Educational Allowance** A 20% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

#### Charges

Program Name/ Number	Order Type	Charge
IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server		
83X9132	Program Package	\$ 1,200
83X9135	Additional Licenses	1,155

**Additional Licenses Charge:** Customers who pay a one-time charge for Additional Licenses may copy machine-readable program materials previously acquired from IBM in a program package. One copy may be made for each additional license ordered.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 provides enhancements that include delayed data maintenance, terminal monitoring, audit log, additional layaway support, batching of department totals at the terminal, terminal load procedure, operation in a multiple controller backup environment, support for operator display as a primary display, support for the shopper display as a secondary display, support for the alphanumeric display as a secondary display, and provision for user reports. The release also includes support for the previously announced functions of an Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) tender type and magnetic wand.

**One-Time Charge: \$900**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

5669-031 IBM 4680 General Sales Application  
Version 1 Release 2

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- IBM Authorized Value Added Dealers (VADS)

#### Product Positioning

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application is an application program designed for retail personnel to assist in the management of retail store operations.

#### Marketing Strategy

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application is intended for the general retail market. Any retail customer who requires a point-of-sale system is a potential user.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5669-031" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

**Marketing Assistance Program (MAP):** The IBM 4680 Store System family of programs is not approved as designated licensed programs for MAP. However, this

program is eligible for a 30% discount under the terms and conditions of the MAP Demonstration System Discount Program announced for the IBM 4680 Store System in Memorandum to Marketing Management M87-080, dated June 2, 1987. Refer to the Branch Coordinator's Guide (ZZ60-2829) for order processing procedures.

**Industry Support:** Marketing support for the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 licensed program is provided by the Distribution and Store Systems Industry Marketing Support Center in Raleigh, North Carolina. Assistance is available from Store Systems branch offices.

#### Education Support

See IBM Education Announcement 486-001, dated January 8, 1986. Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2.

#### HONE Information

The 4680 Store System Marketing Guide, currently available under the INDUSTRY section of HONE, and 4680 Sample Proposal currently available under the PROP section of HONE, will be updated to reflect this announcement.

#### Installation Information

##### Installation Support

Installation and technical support is provided by Distribution Store Systems Industry Support in Raleigh, North Carolina.

**Field Support:** Branch office system engineers should contact the Store Systems branch office for technical assistance. The Store Systems branch office system engineers may also access EQUAL through the HONE CMS EXEC, EQMSS1, to review answers to IBM 4680 related questions or to enter appropriate EQUAL questions. (Entry of EQUAL questions will be available only to the Store Systems branch office specialists and designated Store Systems system engineers until planned availability). Articles containing installation and other technical topics not documented in formal system reference library publications will also be made available through HONE applications INFOSYSTEM or INFOMENU.

## **Administrative Information**

### **Ordering Information**

The HONE configuration aid, CFPROGS, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

**Special Software Instructions:** Administrators responsible for ordering this program should understand that unlike other IBM Personal Computer software, the programs in this announcement are subject to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs and will be distributed from Sterling Forest, New York by IBM Software Distribution. These circumstances produce special administrative considerations. Refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG4.

**Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Processing:** Programs in this announcement are available under the provisions of the VPA. For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

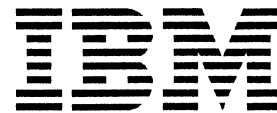
### **Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 provides enhancements that include delayed data maintenance, terminal monitoring, audit log, additional layaway support, batching of department totals at the terminal, terminal load procedure, operation in a multiple controller backup environment, support for operator display as a primary display, support for the shopper display as a secondary display, support for the alphanumeric display as a secondary display, and provision for user reports. The release also includes support for the previously announced functions of an Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) tender type and magnetic wand.

**One-Time Charge: \$900**

**Planned Availability Date: December 31, 1987**

**5669-031 IBM 4680 General Sales Application  
Version 1 Release 2**

### Highlights

New functions include the following:

- Delayed data maintenance
- Terminal monitoring
- Audit log
- Terminal load procedure
- Operation in multiple controller backup environment
- Selection screen for user-written reports.

Enhanced functions include the following:

- Capability to batch department totals at the IBM 4683
- Data maintenance support for adding customer data to the layaway record
- Void previous transaction - Automatic updating of accounting totals.

Device support:

- Support for shopper and alphanumeric displays as secondary displays
- Support for operator display as primary display
- Processes input from EFT tender type device attached to an IBM 4683

- Processes input from magnetic wand reader attached to an IBM 4683.

### Description

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 includes enhancements that provide more functions and more control to assist store management in their daily operations.

Delayed data maintenance is a new function for maintenance of key application files. Updates to these files can be controlled on a batch basis and made effective either immediately, or at a specific time based on a timer value.

Terminal monitoring is used to monitor the sales activity of another IBM 4683 terminal. The terminal monitoring can be done at either another IBM 4683 terminal or the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller. Once terminal monitoring is initiated, monitoring begins at the start of the next sales transaction.

Audit log provides an audit trail of accounting data and key procedural events that occurred during the current accounting period. The audit log keeps a history of store activities which can affect the accounting totals file during the accounting period. In addition, unauthorized sign-on attempts at the IBM 4683 terminal are recorded.

Terminal load procedure is a non-sales procedure which can assist in improving the availability of IBM 4683 terminals. In cases where no IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller is available to reload IBM 4683 terminals, the terminal load procedure allows an IBM 4683 Model 1 terminal to distribute its memory across the store loop to other powered-on unloaded IBM 4683 Model 1 terminals.

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 will operate in a system with the optional multiple controller feature of the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 2 to provide a file backup function using a data distribution facility that synchronizes files during normal IBM 5170 Store Controller operation and automatically reconciles files returned from a back up situation.

The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 supports the shopper and alphanumeric displays as secondary displays on the IBM 4683. A limited number of sales-related messages are displayed on the secondary display. The operator display and the alphanumeric display are supported as primary displays

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

and will display all of the General Sales Application messages previously supported in Release 1.

A user procedure selection screen has been provided to allow the user access to his own user-written reports.

When obtaining department totals at the IBM 4683 terminal, it is possible to request these totals by a batch number, obtaining multiple department totals with a single request.

Layaway has been enhanced to provide the capability to update the layaway account record with the customer name, address, and phone number via data maintenance.

Void previous transaction is available with the capability to have the Store Controller provide the detailed updating of the accounting totals, (reverses previous arithmetic), by identifying the transaction in question without entering each individual line item.

EFT tender type supports the processing of input from a compatible non-IBM MSR/PIN Pad attached to the IBM 4683 for identification and entry of EFT data. This support includes the ability to interface with a host network to complete the EFT transfer. Users must evaluate their non-IBM MSR/PIN Pad to insure compatibility with the IBM 4680 General Sales Application.

Magnetic wand support processes input from a magnetic wand attached to an IBM 4683 to wand merchandise tickets and price change tickets. The modify ticket keying sequence allows the salesperson to modify quantity, price, and taxable status of an item when scanning or wand merchandise tickets.

#### **Publications**

The following basic publications are shipped with the program:

- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Planning and Installation Guide (GC30-3368)
- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Guide to Operations (SC30-3369)
- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Programming Guide (SC30-3370)
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9590)

These publications will be available after planned availability. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

#### **Education Support**

See IBM Education Announcement 486-001, dated January 8, 1986. Educational offerings will be updated to include the functions of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2.

#### **Schedule**

Availability is planned for December 31, 1987.

#### **Technical Information**

##### **Specified Operating Environment**

**Machine Requirements:** This licensed program is designed to operate on the following IBM machines.

The store controller configuration is an IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller with a video display. A printer is required for the controller at the central site. (For specific models of displays and printers supported

by this application, see IBM Programming Announcements 286-001, dated January 8, 1986, and 286-156, dated April 16, 1986.) Depending on the configuration, this application will require between 210K and 838K of memory in the controller, in addition to any other program requirements such as the IBM 4680 Operating System. The following is a summary of storage requirements for the functional elements of this application:

Sales support (background processing)	150K
Host positive credit	100K
EFT	65K
Administrative procedures	250K
File format translation	85K
Shared runtime subroutine library	60K (required)
Delayed maintenance timer	48K
Delayed maintenance start immediate	80K

File requirements for the application range from 2.3Mb to 6.5Mb, not including user data files.

IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Model 1, with an optionally attached IBM 4683 Model 2, is required. A minimum of 475K of memory is required to support the application in the terminal, in addition to the memory requirements for the 4680 Operating System. The devices required include the keyboard, printer, one cash drawer, and a display. Other supported devices include a magnetic stripe reader, IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner (3687-2), IBM 1520 Hand Held Scanner Model A02, non-IBM magnetic stripe reader/PIN Pad, and hand-held readers (magnetic, OCR, or bar code). The IBM 3687 Model 2 Scanner can co-exist with the IBM 1520 Hand Held Scanner.

**Programming Requirements / Host Requirements:** This program is licensed at each Store Controller, which is the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller. A host system is not required for application program development, installation, operation, or maintenance. A host system (System 370 with advanced data communication for stores) can be used to distribute copies of the configured operating system and personalized application to controllers in multiple locations, after receiving this data by communicating with the development Store Controller. Optionally, this data can be distributed by copying the data from the development Store Controller to diskettes and making multiple copies of these diskettes. Any copying or distribution of this application shall be subject to the terms and conditions of Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Programming Language:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 is written in IBM 4680 BASIC.

**Modifications:** User modifications to this licensed program can be made through user exits which are supplied with the object code. IBM 4680 BASIC is a prerequisite for writing code modifications for user exits. For those modifications beyond the capability of the user exits, source code will be available as an optional feature. The prerequisites for writing modifications to the source code are the same as those for writing modifications with user exits.

**Controller Environment:** The IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 executes in the IBM 5170 Personal Computer AT/Store Controller and the IBM 4683 Point Of Sale Terminal and uses the IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 2 or equivalent.

**Compatibility:** This program is not compatible with the IBM 3650 or IBM 3680 Programmable Store Systems (PSS). However, it does provide similar keying sequences at the point of sale terminal to those in the PSS point-of-sale application for the retail environment. It also provides, as an option, PSS-compatible formats on some data file exchanges between the store controller and the host.

**Limitations:** The IBM 4683 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 requires Advanced Data Communication System Program Product or a user-written program, for communication with a host System/370.

**Performance Considerations:** Performance will be dependent on the amount of transactions being processed, and the number of concurrent tasks executing on the IBM 5170 Personal Computer/AT Store Controller.

#### Planning Information

**Customer Responsibilities:** Installation files will be provided on diskettes to simplify installation. The user has to specify through a personalization process which options are to be included in the program.

**Installability:** Installation of this application will require a relinking of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application with any user changes.

**Packaging:** IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 basic machine-readable material will be shipped on 5 1/4-inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector in Personal Computer format. Optional machine-readable material will be shipped on 5 1/4-inch diskettes 2HC at 512 bytes/sector in Personal Computer format.

A memo to users, program directory, and one copy of the following unlicensed documents are shipped with the basic machine-readable material:

- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Planning and Installation Guide (GC30-3368)
- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Guide to Operations (SC30-3369)
- IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Programming Guide (SC30-3370)
- Licensed Program Specifications (GC30-9590).

An addendum to the program directory is shipped with the optional material.

#### Security, Auditability, and Control

The security and auditability features of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2 include operator authorization and control by function and transaction type. In addition, unique functions can be limited to specified terminals. Significant events are logged for audit purposes. Additional security is provided by the IBM 4680 Operating System.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

#### Ordering Information

##### Current Licensees

Current licensees of IBM 4680 General Sales Application will automatically receive this update from IBM Software Distribution. This shipment of Release 2, Modification Level 0, is scheduled to be completed by January 15, 1988.

##### New Licensees

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date should be scheduled for shipment January 8, 1988. Orders entered after the availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of the IBM 4680 General Sales Application should specify:

Type: 5669. Model: 031.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number and feature number 9001 for asset registration. Specify feature number 4604 for a one-time charge (OTC) and the feature number of the desired distribution medium shown below.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
5898	2HC diskette

**Optional Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number for the desired distribution medium. To order an optional source material license, enter the program number and feature number, 4641 (one-time charge), and the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Feature Number	Distribution Medium
7898*	2HC diskette

\* Contains Restricted Material of IBM.

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A memo, program directory, and one copy of the following publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material:

Title	Order Number
IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Planning and Installation Guide	GC30-3368
IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Guide To Operations	SC30-3369
IBM 4680 General Sales Application: Programming Guide	SC30-3370
Licensed Program Specifications	GC30-9590

Additional copies will be available for a fee by December 31, 1987. To order contact your IBM marketing representative.

**Licensed Documentation:** The following licensed material will be available from IBM Software Distribution by December 31, 1988. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.

The first copy is available at no charge to licensees of basic material. Use the 7040 feature to order the first copy and the 8002 feature number to order additional copies for a fee.

Title	Order Number	First Copy Order Number	Additional Copies Feature Number
IBM 4680 General Sales Application Program Reference	LY30-5588	7040	8002

Customers registered for licensed material will receive all updates automatically.

#### Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs and the Exhibit for IBM Store Systems Licensed Programs. The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the one-time charge option:

Minimum Quantity of Programs by Category	Discount Percent
6-59	6%
60-149	12%
150-224	16%
225 or more	20%

The licensed programs in this announcement are in Category J.

**Warranted:** Yes, basic license only.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: Yes. This licensed program will be available with some licensed program materials designated as RESTRICTED MATERIALS OF IBM. The remaining licensed program materials are available and are not designated as RESTRICTED MATERIALS OF IBM.

**Testing Period:** Basic license, one month.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until discontinued by IBM upon six months written notice.

**Program Currency:** Program Services for the IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 1 will be available until December 31, 1989.

#### Charges

Program Name	One-Time Charge
IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2	\$ 900
Licensed Optional Materials	10,000

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately. If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.

**Licensed Optional Program Materials Charge:** Selected optional program materials are available for a separate one-time charge.





# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Program Offering, Print Services Facility/36 Version 1 Release 1

**Print Services Facility/36 (PSF/36)** is a program offering that processes Advanced Function Printing Data Stream (AFPDS) print files and AFPDS resource files so that they can be printed on an IBM 3820 Page Printer or an IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2 attached to IBM System/36, System Unit 5360 or 5362.

**One-Time Charge:** \$3,200

**Planned Availability Date:** December 18, 1987

**5798-FAQ Print Services Facility/36  
Version 1 Release 1**

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5798-FAQ" at the entry prompt arrow on the selection screen. MV is also available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

**Marketing Assistance Program (MAP):** To support MAP participants who want to acquire (one-time charge only) a demonstration license of the PSF/36 program offering, an offering at the following discount is available for the sole purpose of supporting marketing assistance activities under the terms and conditions of the MAP Demonstration System Discount Program. Refer to the MAP Administrative Guide, Subsection 10 (Special Programs) on HONE for further details. The access is ADMINISTRATIVE, ADPUBS.

Program Name	Program Number	Discount
Print Services Facility/36	5798-FAQ	30%

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

National technical support will not be available.

### Administrative Information

#### Volume Discount

The revised Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs (VP5727-3) is enclosed and must be used for all new VPAs effective immediately. Additional copies are available through DAWN.

The revised Volume License Amendment (VLA) Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs (LP5727-14) is enclosed for use with existing VLAs only. Additional copies are available through DAWN.

**VPA/VLA Transition:** The revised VPA or VLA Exhibit applies to customers with VPAs or VLAs for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs in effect with a commitment in Category D. See the Notice to IBM Customers included with this announcement for transition details.

**Special Bid Transition:** The announced programs are not being added automatically to any existing special bid. If there is a request to add the announced program to a special bid, a special bid request should be submitted via the Multiples Marketing Support System (MMSS).

#### Administrative Action Required

**VPA/VLA Customer Notification:** Within 10 calendar days after this announcement the attached Notice to IBM Customers and the appropriate revised VPA or VLA Exhibit must be sent by the branch office to all customers with a VPA or VLA in effect for the affected exhibit. The exhibit sent should be based on whether the customer has a VLA Exhibit or VPA Exhibit in effect.

This customer notification must be documented with a locally initiated control listing documenting the mailing dates, or, if hand delivered, the date and name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered. File this control list locally for future reference to substantiate proof of customer notification.

Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

#### Ordering Information

The HONE configuration aid, CFS36, may be used to determine ordering information. The HONE aid, SYSLINK, may be used to transmit the ordering information from HONE to AAS.

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are available under the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA). For special administrative information, refer to ADMININFO Item No. 350WK.

**Programming RPQs**

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

**Attachment Information**

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 287-565-1A\* Z125-4005-03 VP5727-3 VPA Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs
- 287-565-1B\* Z125-9020-14 LP5727-14 VLA Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs
- 287-565-1C\* Notice to IBM Customers, VPA Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs Revised

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

**Sponsoring Executive**

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM System/36 Licensed Programs**  
**Volume Procurement Amendment**  
**to Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs**

**Exhibit No.: VP5727-3**  
**December 15, 1987**

## 1. ELIGIBLE PROGRAMS:

<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>	<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>
A	5727-SS1	H	5727-M7B	I	5729-D45
B	5727-DS1	H	5727-M7G	I	5729-D46
B	5727-QU1	H	5727-M7H	I	5729-D47
B	5727-UT1	H	5727-M7J	I	5729-D48
		H	5727-M7K	I	5729-D49
C	5727-AS1	H	5727-M7L	J	5727-M6X
C	5727-BA1	H	5727-M7N	J	5727-M66
C	5727-CB1	H	5727-M7P	J	5727-M67
C	5727-FO1	H	5727-M7X	J	5727-M68
C	5727-RG1	H	5729-M71	J	5727-M69
		H	5729-M72	J	5729-M6A
D	5727-AP1	H	5729-M73	J	5729-M6X
D	5727-BG1	H	5729-M74	J	5729-M66
D	5727-OS1	H	5729-M75	J	5729-M67
D	5727-TX1	H	5729-M76	J	5729-M68
D	5727-WP1	H	5729-M77	J	5729-M69
D	5727-WP3	H	5729-M78		
D	5798-FAQ	H	5729-M79	K	5710-GA4
		H	5729-M7A	K	5710-GA5
E	5710-CAT	H	5729-M7B	K	5710-GA6
E	5727-BR1	H	5729-M7G	K	5710-GA7
E	5727-XR1	H	<sup>m</sup> 5729-M7H	K	5710-GA8
E	5796-PZK	H	5729-M7J	K	5710-GA9
E	5796-PZL	H	5729-M7K		
E	5796-ZGN	H	5729-M7L	L	5796-ZFY
E	5798-RPT	H	5729-M7N	L	5796-ZGA
E	5798-RPX	H	5729-M7P	L	5796-ZGB
E	5798-RRW	H	5729-M7X	L	5796-ZGC
				L	5796-ZGD
F	5727-EP1	I	5727-D4A	L	5796-ZGF
F	5727-LC1	I	5727-D41	L	5796-ZNA
F	5727-WS1	I	5727-D42	L	5796-ZNB
<sup>d</sup> G	5727-WP2	I	5727-D43	L	5796-ZNC
		I	5727-D44	L	5796-ZND
H	5727-M71	I	5727-D45	L	5796-ZNE
H	5727-M72	I	5727-D46	L	5796-ZNF
H	5727-M73	I	5727-D47	L	5796-ZNG
H	5727-M74	I	5727-D48	L	5796-ZNH
H	5727-M75	I	5727-D49	L	5796-ZNJ
H	5727-M76	I	<sup>m</sup> 5729-D4A	L	5796-ZNK
H	5727-M77	I	5729-D41	L	5796-ZPN
H	5727-M78	I	5729-D42	L	5796-ZPQ
H	5727-M79	I	5729-D43	L	5796-ZPR
H	5727-M7A	I	5729-D44	L	5796-ZPT

2. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE AND AVAILABLE CONTRACT PERIOD DURATION:

Minimum Quantity of Eligible Programs by Category		Discount Percent	
Duration (Months)		Categories	
18		A, B, C, D, E, F, L**	H, I, J, K**
5		6%	*
10		9%	6%
15		12%	9%
23		15%	12%
38		20%	15%
57		25%	20%
75		30%	25%
125			30%

\* Not applicable to this Category

\*\* Programs from one Category cannot be added together with those in another Category to determine the applicable Discount Percent.

d	Dependent Categories:	Dependent Category	Controlling Category
		G	D

m Maximum Discounts: These Eligible Programs are not eligible for a discount.

**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM System/36 Licensed Programs**  
**Volume License Amendment**

**Exhibit No.: LP5727-14**  
**December 15, 1987**

1. CONTRACT PERIOD DURATION: 18 Months from Commencement Date

2. ELIGIBLE LICENSED PROGRAMS:

Category A	Category B	Category C	Category D	Category E	Category F	Category G
5727-SS1	5727-UT1 5727-QU1 5727-DS1	5727-AS1 5727-BA1 5727-CB1 5727-FO1 5727-RG1	5727-OS1 5727-TX1 5727-AP1 5727-WP1 5727-WP3 5727-BG1 5798-FAQ	5710-CAT 5727-BR1 5727-XR1 5796-PZK 5796-PZL 5796-ZGN 5798-RPT 5798-RPX 5798-RRW	5727-WS1 5727-LC1 5727-EP1	5727-WP2
Category H	Category I	Category J	Category K	Category M		
5727-M71 5727-M72 5727-M73 5727-M74 5727-M75 5727-M76 5727-M77 5727-M78 5727-M79 5727-M7A 5727-M7B 5727-M7G 5727-M7H 5727-M7J 5727-M7K 5727-M7L 5727-M7N 5727-M7P 5727-M7X	5729-M71 5729-M72 5729-M73 5729-M74 5729-M75 5729-M76 5729-M77 5729-M78 5729-M79 5729-M7A 5729-M7B 5729-M7G <sup>m</sup> 5729-M7H 5729-M7J 5729-M7K 5729-M7L 5729-M7N 5729-M7P 5729-M7X	5727-D4A 5727-D41 5727-D42 5727-D43 5727-D44 5727-D45 5727-D46 5727-D47 5727-D48 5727-D49 <sup>m</sup> 5729-D4A 5729-D41 5729-D42 5729-D43 5729-D44 5729-D45 5729-D46 5729-D47 5729-D48 5729-D49	5727-M6A 5727-M6X 5727-M66 5727-M67 5727-M68 5727-M69 5729-M6A 5729-M6X 5729-M66 5729-M67 5729-M68 5729-M69	5710-GA4 5710-GA5 5710-GA6 5710-GA7 5710-GA8 5710-GA9	5796-ZFY 5796-ZGA 5796-ZGB 5796-ZGC 5796-ZGD 5796-ZGF 5796-ZNA 5796-ZNB 5796-ZNC 5796-ZND 5796-ZNE 5796-ZNF 5796-ZNG 5796-ZNH 5796-ZNJ 5796-ZNK 5796-ZPN 5796-ZPQ 5796-ZPR 5796-ZPT	

3. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE:

----- Quantity of Eligible Licensed Programs -----			
Discount Percent	Categories A, B, C, D, E, F, M <sup>*</sup>	Category G	Categories H, I, J, K, <sup>*</sup>
6%	5-9	See Note Below	10-14
9%	10-14		15-22
12%	15-22		23-37
15%	23-37		38-56
20%	38-56		57-74
25%	57-74		75-124
30%	75 or more		125 or more

\* Licensed Programs from one Category cannot be added together with those in another Category to determine the applicable Discount Percent.

NOTE: All Licensed Programs in Category G will receive the same Discount Percent and associated terms and conditions that are received by the Licensed Programs in Category D but are not added together with Category D Licensed Programs for purposes of determining the Category D discount.

<sup>m</sup> Maximum Discounts: These Eligible Licensed Programs are not eligible for a discount.

4. PRICE PROTECTION-UPPER LIMIT PERCENT:

First Year: 0%  
Second Year: 7%



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Volume Procurement Amendment Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs Revised

IBM announces a new program which has been added to your Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) or Volume License Amendment (VLA) Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs. The program announced has been included in Category D effective immediately and includes:

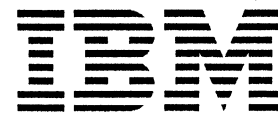
Program Number	Program Name
5798-FAQ	Print Services Facility/36

The attached VPA or VLA Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs automatically supersedes your present VPA or VLA Exhibit.

Customers with an existing VPA or VLA may order the new program either as additional quantities to, or as direct substitutes for, the other programs listed in Category D. If sufficient additional quantities are ordered to qualify for a greater discount than currently is in effect, a Supplement for Additional Quantities must be signed.

If you have questions regarding this notification, contact your IBM marketing representative.

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Program Offering, Print Services Facility/36 Version 1 Release 1

**Print Services Facility/36 (PSF/36)** is a program offering that processes Advanced Function Printing Data Stream (AFPDS) print files and AFPDS resource files so that they can be printed on an IBM 3820 Page Printer or an IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2 attached to IBM System/36, System Unit 5360 or 5362.

**One-Time Charge: \$3,200**

**Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987**

**5798-FAQ    Print Services Facility/36  
Version 1 Release 1**

### Highlights

- Provides the advantages of Advanced Function Printing (AFP) on System/36
- Electronic overlays reduce the need for preprinted forms
- Images and text can be combined on one page
- Supports printing of AFPDS files on a System/36 attached 3820 or 3812
- Menus provided for ease of use
- Interactive and batch processing of print files.

### Description

AFP offers many improvements over traditional line printing. AFP is a collection of functions used with all-points-addressable printers, such as the 3820 and the 3812. All-points addressability (APA) means that the printer can place data at any addressable point on the page. For example, with AFP you can print:

- Composed pages of text, using typographic fonts of varying sizes and widths
- Graphic images, such as line art, illustrations, logos, and signatures
- Overlays, which can include images and text, and which can replace preprinted forms.

Any of these elements can be mixed on one page, and each element can be oriented in different print directions.

AFP print files and resource files are written in a data format called AFPDS. PSF/36 does not process files containing line mode data. PSF/36 requires AFPDS print

files and AFPDS resource files, including fonts. Existing AFP software can be used on System/370 host systems to generate the necessary AFPDS print files and resource files. For example, AFPDS print files can be created on a System/370 computer using Document Composition Facility (DCF). AFPDS resource files can be created and managed on a System/370 using Print Management Facility (PMF), Page Printer Formatting Aid (PPFA), and Overlay Generation Language (OGL).

From the System/370, a customer-written application could be used to send the files to the System/36 by means of DSX and Distributed Systems Node Executive (DSNX) licensed products. A tape or diskette transfer can also be used. After the AFPDS print files and AFPDS resource files are on the System/36, PSF/36 can be used to convert them to a data format called Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS) which PSF/36 then sends to a 3820 or 3812 Printer.

### Publications

The following basic publications are shipped with the program:

- Print Services Facility/36 User's Guide and Reference (S544-3485)
- Print Services Facility/36 Availability Notice (G544-3143)

Additional copies of basic publications will be available at planned availability.

### Schedule

Availability is planned for December 18, 1987. Refer to Ordering Information for ship dates.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** PSF/36 Version 1 Release 1 requires:

- An IBM System Unit 5360 or an IBM System Unit 5362, with 512K or larger of main storage
- System console
- System printer
- DASD equal to 60Mb or larger.

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

In addition, either an IBM 3820 Page Printer or an IBM 3812 Pageprinter Model 2 is required.

For a 3820 the following is required:

- An SNA communications adapter on the System/36
- External Integrated Adapter (EIA) interface attachment feature, number 3050
- A communications hardware connection from the System/36 to the 3820, such as a communications line and a modem or modem eliminator. The modem or modem eliminator must support the RS-232C protocol and levels, and it must be self-clocking. The maximum bit rate supported is 19.2Kbps.

For a 3812 the following is required:

- System/36 twinax attachment feature number 3015
- 3812 Pageprinter Model 2 with IPDS feature number 3192.

In addition to the above, a processor, supported by AFP software listed under Programming Requirements, would normally be required for creation of the AFPDS print files and resource files.

**Programming Requirements:** This licensed program is released to work with System/36 SSP Release 5 Modification Level 1 (5727-SS1).

If a 3820 is used, the following are required:

- 5727-SS1 feature number 6001, Base Communications
- 5727-SS1 feature number 6266, Interactive Communications Feature (ICF) - Base

Software is required for the creation of AFPDS print files and resource files. Any of the following AFP licensed programs and their requisite software meet that need:

- DCF (5748-XX9)
- Overlay Generation Language/MVS (5665-308)  
Overlay Generation Language/VSE (5666-324)  
Overlay Generation Language/VM (5664-293)
- Print Management Facility/MVS (5665-307)  
Print Management Facility/VM (5664-310)
- Page Printer Formatting Aid/MVS (5665-351)  
Page Printer Formatting Aid/VSE (5666-327)  
Page Printer Formatting Aid/VM (5664-199).

A source of fonts, on the System/370 host, is required for PSF/36 processing. Typographic fonts could be acquired as individual licensed programs. Non-typographic fonts are available with PSF licensed program:

- Print Services Facility/MVS (5665-275)  
Print Services Facility/VSE (5666-319)  
Print Services Facility/VM (5664-198).

Refer to the licensing agreement for each product for its use.

**Limitations:** Restrictions on the use of the 3812 and the 3820 with PSF/36:

- The 3812 can be used as the System/36 system printer if it has attachment feature number 3015. The 3820 cannot be used as the System/36 system printer.
- The 3820 is used exclusively by PSF/36, while the 3812 is shared between PSF/36 and System Support Program (SSP). The 3820 cannot be used by native applications.

### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

PSF/36 uses the security and auditability features of the System/36.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

### **Ordering Information**

#### **New Licensees**

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned general availability date will be scheduled for shipment December 24, 1987. Orders entered after the general availability date will be scheduled for the week following order entry.

New users of PSF/36 Version 1 Release 1 should specify:

Type: 5798. Model: FAQ.

**Basic License:** To order a basic license, specify the program number. Specify feature number 4499 for a one-time charge (OTC) and the feature number of the distribution medium shown below.

**DSLO License:** To order a DSLO license, specify the program number and feature number 9599 for a one-time charge (OTC). Ordering a DSLO feature will result in IBM Software Distribution maintaining a record of this customer location as a DSLO user only. All material for the DSLO license must be ordered by the basic license. If a user selects DSLO, no other feature numbers are valid for this order and no program materials or updates will be shipped.

**Basic Machine-Readable Material:** To order, select the feature number of the desired distribution medium.

Environment	Feature Number	Distribution Medium
System/36	9049	8-inch diskette

**Unlicensed Documentation:** A program directory and one copy of the following publications are supplied automatically with the basic machine-readable material:

Title	Order Number	Price
Print Services Facility/36 User's Guide and Reference	S544-3485	\$40.25
Print Services Facility/36 Availability Notice	G544-3143	N/C

Additional copies of the PSF/36 User's Guide and Reference are available for a fee. To order, contact your IBM marketing representative.



## Terms and Conditions

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

**Graduated Charges Amendment Applies:** No.

**Installation License or Location License Applies:** No. A separate license is required for each designated machine on which the licensed program materials will be used except as otherwise provided by IBM.

**Usage License Applies:** No.

**Educational Allowance:** A 15% educational allowance toward eligible license charges is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) for Machines and Programs (Z125-3980) and the Exhibit for IBM System/36 Licensed Programs (VP5727-3). The following discount schedule applies for licenses obtained under the one-time charge option:

Quantity	Category D
5 -- 9	6%
10 -- 14	9%
15 -- 22	12%
23 -- 37	15%
38 -- 56	20%
57 -- 74	25%
75 or more	30%

The VPA discount applies to both Basic and DSLO one-time charge licenses.

The licensed programs in this announcement are in Category D.

**Warranted:** Basic License - Yes. DSLO - Not Applicable.

**Licensed Program Materials Availability:** Restricted Materials: No. This licensed program will be available without source licensed program materials. It will be available in object code.

**Testing Period:** Basic License - One Month. DSLO - Not Applicable.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until December 18, 1989. Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, for DSLO licenses will be provided only through the customer location designated for the basic license.

## Charges

Program Name	Basic	DSLO
	One-Time Charge	One-Time Charge
Print Services Facility/36	\$3,200	\$2,816

**One-Time Charge:** Customers who pay a graduated or non-graduated one-time charge for a licensed program receive enhancements and future releases, if any, at no additional charge. Significant new function may be offered as an optional feature and charged for separately.

If a new version is announced and the customer elects to license the new version for a one-time charge and replace the prior version, an upgrade charge may apply.



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Remote PrintManager Update Provides IBM Personal System/2™ Support

Remote PrintManager availability is extended to the IBM Personal System/2 Model 30. This capability was previously announced as available only on the IBM Personal Computer AT®. Remote PrintManager 1.0 (6476146) will be replaced by Remote PrintManager 1.0.1 (75X3257) which will be available with dual media.

**One-Time Charge: \$3,295**

**Planned Availability Date: January 29, 1988**

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

**75X3257 Remote PrintManager 1.0.1**

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD

#### Product Positioning

Remote PrintManager is designed to decrease the amount of data that must be transmitted over communication lines linking remote 3820 Page Printers to MVS hosts. This program, residing in a Personal System/2 Model 30, coupled with the System/370 Channel Emulator Card, provides channel attachment from a 3820 to a Personal System/2. Remote PrintManager also interfaces through Advanced Program-to-Program Communication/Personal Computer (APPC/PC) to Print Services Facility/MVS (PSF/MVS) thereby providing a means for remote management of print resources.

Performance improvements can be expected for customers with remote 3820s who have print resource (fonts, overlays, page segments) intensive applications. Additionally, remote 3820 printing may be added to existing Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC) communication connected networks without requiring the installation of additional communication lines.

#### Marketing Strategy

Remote PrintManager should be marketed to customers where "resource intensive" printing applications are coupled with remotely (communication line) attached 3820 printers. The term "resource intensive" is defined as print jobs consisting of small amounts of variable data and large amounts of data for the printed document which do

not change in the application, for example, boilerplate text, multiple fonts, logos, and signatures.

A second focus area is for customers that have distributed printing and need to add other communication capabilities, for example, terminals and Personal Computers, to existing communication lines as well as customers wanting to add distributed printing without major impact to existing networks. These factors provide significant financial benefit to the customer in the area of communication cost.

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal provisions apply.

**Measurement Value (MV):** MV is available on HONE for all products by keying the command "POINTS" or "POINTS 5871-AAA". MV also is available on AAS under the mnemonic QSLM.

#### Marketing Support

**Demonstrations:** Selected customer centers with MVS and 3820s installed will have demonstration and Remote PrintManager support capability.

#### HONE Information

Proposal material will not be available through HONE. A configuration aid will not be available through HONE.

#### Installation Information

##### Installation Support

National technical support will not be available.

#### Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 29, 1988.

To order, select the order type and enter the appropriate order type number and feature numbers. Multiple features and any quantity of a feature may be entered per order type.

**Program Package:** Program diskette with documentation.

Order Type Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Media
5871-AAA	3257	Remote PrintManager 1.0.1	Dual

Programs in this announcement are licensed under the provisions of the IBM Program License Agreement and are ordered as type/model program numbers and shipped from IBM Software Distribution. For additional processing information refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPBG5.

Program Packages include dual program diskettes (3 1/2-inch and 5 1/4-inch) with documentation.

**Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Processing:** Programs in this announcement are eligible for volume discounting. For information regarding VPA registration and processing, refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPFL5.

***Programming RPQs***

Requests for PRPQs will not be accepted.

**Sponsoring Executive**

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Remote PrintManager Update Provides IBM Personal System/2™ Support

Remote PrintManager availability is extended to the IBM Personal System/2 Model 30. This capability was previously announced as available only on the IBM Personal Computer AT®. Remote PrintManager 1.0 (6476146) will be replaced by Remote PrintManager 1.0.1 (75X3257) which will be available with dual media.

**One-Time Charge: \$3,295**

**Planned Availability Date: January 29, 1988**

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

**75X3257 Remote PrintManager 1.0.1**

### Highlights

- Channel attaches a 3820 to a Personal System/2 Model 30 or a Personal Computer AT via the System/370 Channel Emulator card.
- Attaches to an MVS host via Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC) communication lines.
- Provides pass-through emulation of Print Services Facility/MVS (PSF/MVS) records and printer responses/error codes.
- Constructs Personal System/2 or Personal Computer AT resource object libraries of resources received from PSF/MVS.
- Constructs Personal System/2 or Personal Computer AT directories of resources received from PSF/MVS.
- Formats and prints resource library status.
- Informs PSF/MVS of locally stored print resources and downloads to a 3820 as required.

### Description

Remote PrintManager is a program which resides in a Personal System/2 Model 30 or a Personal Computer AT and provides the following functions:

- Creates and manages a local data base containing resources designated by the host for remote storage.
- Inserts the designated resources into the PSF/MVS generated print data stream for the 3820.

- Provides a pass-through mode which lets the 3820 channel attached to the Remote PrintManager operate as a normal SDLC attached 3820.

In order for Remote PrintManager to be utilized, PSF/MVS 1.1 must be updated using the Programming Temporary Fix (PTF) process. This will allow PSF/MVS to:

- Recognize and take advantage of the capabilities provided by the Remote PrintManager.
- Provide an MVS utility to specify which resources will be retained in the Remote PrintManager resource data base in the Personal System/2 or Personal Computer AT.

### Publications

The following publications are shipped as documentation with the program:

- Remote PrintManager User's Guide
- Remote PrintManager Technical Reference

Additional copies of these publications are not available from Lexington.

### Education Support

The Advanced Function Printing curriculum will be updated, where appropriate, to include education for this product. See the Catalogue of IBM Education (G320-1244) for the course descriptions. Call IBM Direct Education, toll free at (800) IBM-2486 for schedules and enrollment.

### Schedule

Availability is planned for January 29, 1988.

### Technical Information

#### Specified Operating Environment

**Machine Requirements:** The following requirements refer to Personal System/2 support. For information regarding Personal Computer AT support, see Programming Announcement 287-080, dated March 17, 1987.

- IBM Personal System/2 Model 30-021
- The IBM Personal System/2 8503 Monochrome Display or 8512 or 8513 Color Displays

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*

- SDLC card (installed in the Personal System/2) and an RS-232 modem or modem eliminator
- System/370 Channel Emulator card (installed in the Personal System/2) and cable (Note: may be ordered as feature code 3200).
- IBM 3820 Page Printer with System/370 Channel Interface Attachment (feature code 3055)
- IBM System/370 Channel Terminators (Bus, part number 2282675 and tag, part number 2282676).

**Note:** Must be ordered from IBM Parts Order Center, Lexington, KY, by calling (606) 232-5831 or emergency orders can be placed at Field Distribution Centers.

- Host System -- requires a 3705/3720/3725 Controller, EIA interface and a RS-232C modem or modem eliminator to communicate to the Personal System/2.

**Programming Requirements:** The following requirements refer to Personal System/2 support. For information regarding Personal Computer AT support, see Programming Announcement 287-080, dated March 17, 1987.

- IBM Personal System/2 Model 30-021
  - Disk Operating System (DOS) Version 3.30
  - Advanced Program-to-Program Communication (APPC/PC) Version 1.11 (75X1047).
- Host software:
  - Existing PSF/MVS Release 1.1 environments
  - PSF/MVS Release 1.1 with the PTF supporting Remote PrintManager or later releases.

**Compatibility:** Remote PrintManager 1.0.1 is compatible with PSF/MVS Release 1.1 (with the PTF supporting Remote PrintManager), APPC/PC, the System/370 Channel Emulator card, and a properly configured Personal Computer AT.

**Limitations:** The Remote PrintManager operates only with the IBM Personal System/2 Model 30 Version 8530-021 or a properly configured Personal Computer AT.

**Performance Considerations:** Remote PrintManager is designed to reduce communication line traffic for remotely attached 3820s and to provide performance improvements for "resource intensive" applications. The term "resource intensive" is defined, in this case, to be print jobs which consist of small amounts of variable data and large amounts of unchanging (boilerplate) data. The use of the term "resource" refers specifically to Advanced Function Printing (AFP) resources, for example, fonts, overlays, and page segments.

For resource intensive applications, Remote PrintManager will reduce line traffic and, in most cases, improve performance.

The performance of the 3820 will be equivalent in most cases when running existing applications with a communications attached 3820 and Remote PrintManager.

**Installability:** Information relating to the installation and operation of Remote PrintManager is contained in documentation shipped with the product. A comprehensive User's Guide, Technical Reference

Manual, menu panels, and help screens are provided with the product.

**Packaging:** Remote PrintManager will be distributed in one package with the following materials:

- IBM Program License Agreement
- Licensed Program Specifications
- User's Guide
- Technical Reference
- Dual diskettes (5 1/4-inch high density and 3 1/2-inch).

Publications shipped with the diskettes may not be ordered separately.

### **Security, Auditability, and Control**

Remote PrintManager uses the security, auditability, and error recovery features of MVS, VTAM, PSF/MVS and the IBM Personal System/2 DOS environment.

User management is responsible for evaluation, selection, and implementation of security features, administrative procedures, and appropriate controls in application systems and communication facilities.

### **Ordering Information**

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment January 29, 1988.

To order the program in this announcement, specify the program name, order type, quantity, and media. The available order type is:

**Program Package:** Program diskette with documentation.

Program Name/Number	Program Type/Model	Program Feature Number
Remote PrintManager 75X3257	5871-AAA	3257

### **Terms and Conditions**

**Licensing:** Programs in this announcement are licensed under the terms and conditions of the IBM Program License Agreement. A copy of the agreement is included in the program package.

**Limited Warranty:** Program Package: Yes. Media: Three months.

**Program Services:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be available until September 30, 1991. The statement of service included in the program package describes this service.

**Volume Discount:** Volume discounting is available under the terms and conditions of the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) and the Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs or the Exhibit for Personal Computer/System Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals. The programs in this announcement are included in the Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs: PCS, and Personal Computer/System Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals: PCSE.

They may be added to the applicable category in the space provided on the Eligible Program List. Program Packages are included in Category A under 5871-AAA.

**Educational Allowance:** A 20% educational allowance is available to qualifying institutions in accordance with the Educational Allowance Amendment. The educational allowance may not be added to any other discount or allowance.

#### **Charges**

Program Name/Number	Order Type	One-Time Charge
Remote PrintManager 75X3257	Program Package	\$3,295



# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Get Set for Writing to Read™ School Kit Available

Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit, a reading readiness and language development product, introduces pre-schoolers and kindergartners to preliminary language concepts that prepare them for Writing to Read as well as for many other beginning reading programs.

The Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit contains the Get Set for Writing to Read program diskettes in both 5.25-inch and 3.5-inch media, audio cassette tape, instruction manual, the Get Set for Writing to Read Alphabet Book Set, and alphabet board. For a description of these components, refer to Programming Announcement 285-466, dated December 3, 1985. The 3.5-inch media includes upgraded graphics enhanced for the IBM Personal System/2. The Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit does not include the chalkboard, chalk, eraser, tracing tray, pencils and clay, currently found in Get Set for Writing to Read (6024468), which continues to be available. These items are not included in the package since schools normally have these supplies available.

Reference: Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit Programming Announcement 287-350, dated August 4, 1987, for additional details.

**One-Time Charge: \$245.00**

**Planned Availability Date: November 13, 1987**

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

**6024768**

### **Ordering Information**

**Volume Procurement Amendment Processing:** Programs in this announcement are eligible for volume discounting. For information regarding VPA registration and processing, refer to ADMININFO Item No. ZPFL5.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

J. E. Dezell, Jr.  
General Manager  
Educational Systems

# Programming Announcement



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Get Set for Writing to Read™ School Kit Available

Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit, a reading readiness and language development product, introduces pre-schoolers and kindergartners to preliminary language concepts that prepare them for Writing to Read as well as for many other beginning reading programs.

The Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit contains the Get Set for Writing to Read program diskettes in both 5.25-inch and 3.5-inch media, audio cassette tape, instruction manual, the Get Set for Writing to Read Alphabet Book Set, and alphabet board. For a description of these components, refer to Programming Announcement 285-466, dated December 3, 1985. The 3.5-inch media includes upgraded graphics enhanced for the IBM Personal System/2. The Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit does not include the chalkboard, chalk, eraser, tracing tray, pencils and clay, currently found in Get Set for Writing to Read (6024468), which continues to be available. These items are not included in the package since schools normally have these supplies available.

Reference: Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit Programming Announcement 287-350, dated August 4, 1987, for additional details.

One-Time Charge: \$245.00

Planned Availability Date: November 13, 1987

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

6024768

### Ordering Information

Orders for new licenses will be accepted now. Unless a later date is specified, orders entered prior to the planned availability date will be scheduled for shipment November 20, 1987. To order, select the order type and enter the appropriate order type number and feature numbers. Any quantity of a feature and multiple features may be entered on a single order.

**Single Program Package:** (Program diskettes with documentation, audio cassette and alphabet board.)

Order Type Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Media
5871-AAA	4768	Get Set for Writing to Read School Kit Single Package	Dual

*This announcement is provided for your information only. IBM's products can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of IBM's applicable agreements. For more information, contact your IBM representative.*





# Programming Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM Data Base Relational Application Directory for VM/System Product (DBRAD/VM) Program Offering Available

The Data Base Relational Application Directory for VM/System Product (DBRAD/VM) is a licensed program that consists of an application directory and an integrated interactive environment for relational application development and data base administration. This program enhances and extends the usability of the DATABASE 2 (DB2) and SQL/DS system catalogs. The directory holds information about an organization's data definitions and application objects such as records, tables, and programs and the relationships between them. In addition, DBRAD/VM provides functions to view and report on operational, access, tuning and authorization details from the DB2 or SQL/DS system catalogs. DBRAD/VM also generates table and data definitions, and SQL data manipulation statement from the DB2 system catalog or DBRAD/MVS directory or from the SQL/DS system catalog or DBRAD/VM directory.

### Sponsoring Executive

P. D. Dance  
Group Director  
Software Management

### Charges

Program	Processor Group	Graduated One-Time Charge
DBRAD/VM 5798-FAP	10	\$3,500
	20	6,125
	30	8,750
	40	14,000

Planned Availability Date: December 18, 1987

### Installation Information

#### Installation Support

**Field Support:** Branch personnel should contact branch and area data base systems specialists for technical marketing assistance. Systems engineers are provided installation and technical support through VNET. Systems engineers should research questions in publications and with the branch specialist before submitting questions to TOROLAB3(DBRADVM).

**Direct Customer Support:** Telephone support for both defect and usage questions is available through the IBM Support Center at 800-237-5511. The customer must provide an access code (customer number) and the product number (5798-FAP). The question information will be recorded by the support center and forwarded to DBRAD/VM development. An answer will be provided to the customer on a "best-effort" basis.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

November 24, 1987

## Personal System/2™ Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter® III Printer (5202-001), Operating System/2™ Standard Edition and Selected Features Available through the IBM Education Order Center

The IBM Personal System/2 Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter III (5202-001), OS/2™ Standard Edition, and selected features are added to the Attachment to the IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement, subject to availability.

The ordering availability for PS/2™ Model 80 (8580-311) and the 314MB Fixed Disk Drive will be announced at a later date.

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- IBM Certified Education Specialists

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Responsibilities

Machine type 8580 and OS/2, subject to availability, can only be delivered by IBM Certified Education Specialists who are Advanced Products Dealers.

Fees will be paid for the assembly and testing of selected features. (Refer to the **Customer Delivery and Support Responsibilities** section of the IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement.) If features are ordered independent of a system unit, no fee will be paid.

#### Marketing Action Required

Assist all affected customers to help them determine how this announcement applies to them. Update bids and proposals along with any related financial analyses.

#### Marketing Focus

**Sales Compensation Plan:** Normal sales plan provisions apply.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

**Customer Notification:** There will be no direct headquarters notification. The branch office is

responsible for providing a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers and the revised Attachment to the Education Product Coordinator Agreement to all appropriate customers. As proof of customer notification, prepare a mailing control list. Mail or hand-deliver the Notice to IBM Customers no later than 10 calendar days from the date of announcement. Make a note of the date mailed or, if hand-delivered, the name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered, and file locally. The notice and attachment may be obtained through DAWN.

### Additional Information

Related IBM Education Order Center Marketing announcements are:

- 387-061, April 2, 1987
- 387-076, May 5, 1987
- 387-130, June 30, 1987
- 387-146, August 4, 1987
- 187-185, October 6, 1987.

For the most current IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement and the Sample -- IBM Selected Products Order/Delivery Agreement (Z125-3970), refer to 387-130, dated June 30, 1987.

### Attachment Information

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 387-215-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers
- 387-215-1B\* Attachment to the IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

W. P. Lyons  
Director  
Workstations Product Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

## Notice to IBM Customers

November 24, 1987

### **Personal System/2™ Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter® III Printer (5202-001), Operating System/2™ and Selected Features Available through the IBM Education Order Center**

The IBM Personal System/2 Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter III, OS/2™ Standard Edition and selected features are added to the Attachment to the IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement, subject to availability.

The ordering availability for PS/2™ Model 80 (8580-311) and the 314MB Fixed Disk Drive will be announced at a later date.

A revised Attachment to the IBM Education Product Coordinator Agreement is included with this notice. All products and features eligible for ordering through the IBM Education Order Center are listed, along with applicable delivery and support fees and assemble and test fees.

Please note the following corrections. The Personal System/2 115MB Fixed Disk Drive (8730) is to be delivered by IBM Certified Education Specialists who are approved by IBM for Advanced Products, and are the only Authorized Deliverers who may be selected for features noted by "A/P" in the Assemble and Test Fees column. Fees for orders placed by Education Product Coordinators on or before November 24, 1987, will be processed for payment by the IBM Education Order Center. The description for feature number 6030 has been corrected to read 256KB Memory Card.

The products listed below will be available for delivery as indicated:

Product/ Feature		Availability
3033	Dual Async Adapter/A	11/24/87
3042	Multi-Protocol Adapter/A	11/24/87
4010	PC Convertible Portable Printer	11/24/87
4060	PC Convertible Battery Charger	11/24/87
4927	Sheetfeed Option Proprinter™ X24	11/24/87
4928	Sheetfeed Attachment Proprinter XL24	11/24/87
5003	Data Migration Facility	11/24/87
6011	PC Music Feature	11/24/87
5202/001	Quietwriter III Printer	12/11/87
7840	Sheetfeed (single drawer)	12/11/87
8362	Sheetfeed Adapter Kit (single drawer)	12/11/87
8459	PC Word Processing with Download Cartridge	12/11/87
8659	PC Multilingual with Download Cartridge	12/11/87
0816	COBOL/2	01/01/88
0818	C/2	01/01/88
0820	Macro Assembler/2	01/01/88
0822	BASIC Compiler/2	01/01/88
0824	FORTRAN/2	01/01/88
0826	Pascal Compiler/2	01/01/88
0828	BASIC Reference, Version 3.30	01/01/88

Product/ Feature		Availability
0923	Operating System/2, Standard Edition, 3.5-inch media, Version 1.0	01/01/88
0925	Operating System/2, Standard Edition, 5.25-inch media, Version 1.0	01/01/88
0930	OS/2 Graphics Development Toolkit	01/01/88
0927	OS/2 Programmer's Toolkit, Version 1.0	01/01/88
0928	OS/2 Technical Reference, Version 1.0	01/01/88

IBM machine type 8580 and OS/2 can only be delivered by IBM Certified Education Specialists, who are approved by IBM for Advanced Products. IBM Certified Education Specialists not approved by IBM for Advanced Products may not be selected as authorized deliverers for these products.

If features are ordered independent of a system unit, no fee will be paid.

If you have any questions regarding this announcement, contact your IBM marketing representative, academic specialist, or state education advisor.

<sup>TM</sup> Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

**ATTACHMENT**  
**IBM EDUCATION PRODUCT COORDINATOR AGREEMENT**

Effective Date: November 24, 1987

Page 1 of 3

Type/Model Feature Number	Eligible IBM Products	Delivery and Support Fees +
8525/001	Personal System/2™ Model 25	\$28
8525/004	Personal System/2 Model 25	37
8525/C02	Personal System/2 Model 25 Collegiate (Monochrome)	40
8525/C05	Personal System/2 Model 25 Collegiate (Color)	48
8525/G01	Personal System/2 Model 25	29
8525/G04	Personal System/2 Model 25	38
8525/K02	Personal System/2 Model 25 Collegiate (Monochrome)	40
8525/K05	Personal System/2 Model 25 Collegiate (Color)	49
8530/002	Personal System/2 Model 30	36
8530/021	Personal System/2 Model 30	48
8550/021	Personal System/2 Model 50*	75
8560/041	Personal System/2 Model 60	A/P
8560/071	Personal System/2 Model 60	A/P
8580/041	Personal System/2 Model 80	A/P
8580/071	Personal System/2 Model 80	A/P
8580/111	Personal System/2 Model 80	A/P
8580/311	Personal System/2 Model 80	A/P
5140/002	PC Convertible	30
5140/003	PC Convertible	30
5140/012	PC Convertible with 5145/001	34
5140/022	PC Convertible	29
8503/001	Monochrome Display	5
8512/001	Color Display	12
8513/001	Color Display	14
8514/001	Color Display	33
5144/001	PC Convertible Monochrome Display	4
5145/001	PC Convertible Color Display	8
4869/001	5.25-inch External Diskette Drive	7
4201/002	Proprinter™ II	12
4202/001	Proprinter XL	17
4207/001	Proprinter X24	17
4208/001	Proprinter XL24	22
5202/001	Quietwriter® III Printer	36

+ Delivery and Support Fees are applicable only to Higher Education Institution Education Product Coordinators who have elected this option.

\* If delivery by an IBM Certified Education Specialist is requested, only an IBM Certified Education Specialist who is approved by IBM for Advanced Products may be selected.

**A/P** IBM Certified Education Specialists who are approved by IBM for Advanced Products are the only Authorized Deliverers who may be selected for Products noted by A/P in the Delivery and Support Fees column.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

Type/Model Feature No.	Eligible IBM Products	Assemble and Test Fees +
7900	Operating System/2™, Extended, 3.5-inch media, Version 1.1	N/A
7899	Operating System/2, Extended, 5.25-inch media, Version 1.1	N/A
0809	Operating System/2, Standard, 3.5-inch media, Version 1.1	N/A
0810	Operating System/2, Standard, 5.25-inch media, Version 1.1	N/A
0816	COBOL/2	N/A
0818	C/2	N/A
0820	Macro Assembler/2	N/A
0822	BASIC Compiler/2	N/A
0824	FORTRAN/2	N/A
0826	Pascal Compiler/2	N/A
0828	BASIC Reference, Version 3.30	N/A
0923	Operating System/2, Standard Edition, 3.5-inch media, Version 1.0	N/A
0925	Operating System/2, Standard Edition, 5.25-inch media, Version 1.0	N/A
0930	OS/2™ Graphics Development Toolkit	N/A
0957	Disk Operating System (DOS) 3.30	N/A
0885	Personal System/2 Collegiate Kit	N/A
0349	Personal System/2 300/1200 Internal Modem/A	8
3001	Personal System/2 80287 Math Co-Processor	11
3002	Personal System/2 80387 Math Co-Processor	A/P
3006	Personal System/2 80286 Memory Expansion Option	12
3009	Personal System/2 80386 System Board (1MB) Memory Expansion Kit	A/P
3012	Personal System/2 80286 Memory Expansion Kit	3
3019	Personal System/2 80386 Memory Expansion Option (2MB)	A/P
3033	Dual Async Adapter/A	4
3042	Multi-Protocol Adapter/A	6
3046	Personal System/2 44MB Fixed Disk Drive	A/P
3051	Personal System/2 70MB Fixed Disk Drive	A/P
3057	Personal System/2 1.44MB Diskette Drive	5
3064	Personal System/2 80386 Memory Expansion Kit (2MB)	A/P
3905	2MB Expanded Memory Adapter	27
3920	Personal System/2 80286 Expanded Memory Adapter/A	22
4005	PC Convertible 128KB Memory Card	3
4010	PC Convertible Portable Printer	N/A
4015	PC Convertible Serial/Parallel Adapter	2
4026	PC Convertible Enhanced Internal Modem	9
4020	PC Convertible Display Adapter	5
4050	Personal System/2 Display Adapter	12
4054	Personal System/2 Display Adapter 8514/A	27
4060	PC Convertible Battery Charger	N/A
4081	Personal System/2 8514 Memory Expansion Kit	6
4103	Personal System/2 Model 25 Carrying Case	N/A
4106	Personal System/2 3.5-inch Diskette Drive	4
4105	Personal System/2 128KB Memory Expansion Kit	1

Type/Model Feature No.	Eligible IBM Products	Assemble and Test Fees +
4927	Sheetfeed Option Proprinter™ X24	N/A
4928	Sheetfeed Attachment Proprinter XL24	N/A
5001	Personal System/2 8087 Math Co-Processor	7
5002	Speech Adapter Personal System/2, Model 30	7
5003	Data Migration Facility	N/A
5004	Personal System/2 Color Display Stand for 8512 Display	N/A
5612	PC Parallel Printer Cable	N/A
6011	PC Music Feature	10
6023	314MB Fixed Disk Drive	A/P
6030	256KB Memory Card	7
7840	Sheetfeed (single drawer)	N/A
8362	Sheetfeed Adapter Kit (single drawer) (Required for #7840)	N/A
8459	PC Word Processing with Download Cartridge	N/A
8659	PC Multilingual with Download Cartridge	N/A
8720	Personal System/2 80387 Math Co-Processor	A/P
8722	Personal System/2 System Board 2MB Memory Expansion Kit	A/P
8730	Personal System/2 115MB Fixed Disk Drive	A/P
8750	Personal System/2 5.25-inch External Diskette Drive Adapter/A	1
8760	Personal System/2 5.25-inch External Diskette Drive Adapter/A	1
8770	Personal System/2 Mouse	N/A
0927	OS/2 Programmer's Toolkit, Version 1.0	N/A
0928	OS/2 Technical Reference, Version 1.0	N/A
4090	PC Convertible Carrying Case, standard	N/A
4095	PC Convertible Carrying Case, compact	N/A

+ Assemble and Test Fees are applicable only to Higher Education Institution Education Product Coordinators.

**A/P** IBM Certified Education Specialists who are approved by IBM for Advanced Products are the only Authorized Deliverers who may be selected for Features noted by "A/P" in the Assemble and Test Fees column.

**N/A** Applicable fees will be paid to qualified Education Product Coordinators for the listed products with the exception of features and software products as noted by N/A.

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, the following program, licensed under the IBM Program License Agreement, is withdrawn from marketing:

Program Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Order Type
6410985	9229	PC/Videotex	5871-BBB (VPA) 5875-MMM (QDA) 5875-Z07 5150-XXX

### Marketing Information

Orders for the withdrawn program will be handled, as follows:

- Existing orders will be filled if shipment is scheduled between December 15, 1987 and April 15, 1988, which is one month following the date of withdrawal.
- New orders placed after December 15, 1987, but before March 15, 1988, will be filled on an as-available basis if the requested delivery is between December 15, 1987 and April 15, 1988.
- Orders placed after March 15, 1988 will not be filled.

### Marketing Action Required

Those customers who have this program on order will be sent the attached Notice to IBM Customers. Marketing representatives must contact these customers immediately and alter existing orders, as directed by the customer. Outstanding bids and proposals must also be updated.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

#### Customer Notification

**On Order:** Those customers who have the withdrawn program on order must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 calendar days of this announcement.

A Customer Notification Control List of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the Notice are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**VPA/QDA Customers:** Within 10 calendar days after this announcement, the attached Notice to IBM Customers, but not the revised VPA or QDA Exhibit, if included with this announcement, must be sent by the branch office to all customers who have a VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs: PCS, VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs -- Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals: PCSE, QDA Exhibit for Personal Computer Licensed Programs (Exhibit No. 3580), QDA Exhibit for Personal Computer Licensed Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals (Exhibit No. 358E), or special bid in effect.

This customer notification must be documented with a locally initiated control listing documenting the mailing dates, or, if hand-delivered, the date and name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered. File this control list locally for future reference to substantiate proof of customer notification.

**Additional Copies:** Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

#### Request for Price Quotation

Effective today, no new PRPQs will be accepted for the program in this announcement.



**Attachment Information**

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 387-216-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Withdrawal from Marketing

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

**Sponsoring Executive**

P. D. Dance  
Group Director, Software Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, the following licensed program is withdrawn from marketing:

Program Number	Feature Number	Program Name	Category
6410985	9229	PC/Videotex	A

On March 15, 1988, the withdrawn program will be removed from the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs: PCS, VPA Eligible Program List for Personal Computer/System Programs -- Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals: PCSE, Quantity Discount Agreement (QDA) Exhibit for Personal Computer Licensed Programs (Exhibit No. 3580), and QDA Exhibit for Personal Computer Licensed Programs for Qualified Educational Institutions/Hospitals (Exhibit No. 358E).

Since IBM's supply of these licensed program is limited, there are ordering limitations that may apply to orders, including those from customers who have VPAs, QDAs, or special bids in effect.

Existing orders will be filled if shipment is scheduled between December 15, 1987 and April 15, 1988, which is one month following the date of withdrawal. New orders placed after December 15, 1987, but before March 15, 1988, will be filled on an as-available basis if the requested delivery is between December 15, 1987 and April 15, 1988.

Orders placed after March 15, 1988, will not be filled. Requests for deferrals of orders beyond one month following the date of withdrawal will result in the cancellation of the order.

If you have questions regarding this notification, please contact your IBM marketing representative.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM 3299 Terminal Multiplexer Maintenance Agreement Service

Effective today, IBM is announcing availability of maintenance agreement service for the 3299 Terminal Multiplexer. The 3299 has a five year warranty and was first made available to customers in May 1983. The first units will become eligible for maintenance agreement service during May 1988.

Customers may choose from the following post warranty service offerings for an annual charge:

- IBM On-site Exchange (IOE)
- Customer On-site Exchange (COE)

Warranty service will continue to be provided using Customer On-Site Exchange (COE) service. Customers with machines currently under warranty may upgrade their warranty service delivery by selecting an IBM On-site Exchange warranty option. The warranty option may be selected any time before the warranty period expires. The upgrade charge will be prorated for the remaining warranty period. The charge will be billed annually.

IBM Warranty Service, Maintenance Service, and IBM Hourly Service may be obtained by calling the IBM Service/Exchange Communications Center at 1-800-428-2569. IBM Hourly Service is available at the applicable rate and terms, including element exchange price if applicable.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should review this announcement with all customers with 3299s installed to determine their service requirements.

Annual minimum maintenance charges for the 3299-002 and 3299-003 will be announced at a later date. First shipments of the 3299-002 were in September 1985. First shipments of the 3299-003 were in June 1986. These products will not be eligible for post warranty service until September 1990 and June 1991, respectively.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notifications directly from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within ten days of announcement.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement is being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred beyond the file status date of the control listing. Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers may be obtained through DAWN.

#### Mid-Range System Amendment

The revised exhibit for eligible machines under the Mid-Range System Amendment to IBM Maintenance Agreement will be available on DAWN, upon the effective date.

#### Corporate Service Amendment

The revised exhibit for eligible machines under the Corporate Service Amendment to IBM Maintenance Agreement will be available on DAWN, upon the effective date.

#### Maintenance Processing

This will be the responsibility of NSD and the maintenance data base will be IMI.

### **Attachment Information**

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 387-217-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - IBM 3299 Terminal Multiplexer Maintenance Agreement Service.

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

W. P. Lyons

Director, Workstations Product Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### IBM 3299 Terminal Multiplexer Maintenance Agreement Service

Effective today, IBM is announcing availability of maintenance agreement service for the 3299 Terminal Multiplexer.

Customers may choose from the following post warranty service offerings for an annual charge:

- IBM On-Site Exchange (IOE)
- Customer On-site Exchange (COE)

Warranty service will continue to be provided using Customer On-Site Exchange (COE) service. Customers with machines currently under warranty may upgrade their warranty service delivery by selecting an IBM On-site Exchange warranty option. The warranty option may be selected any time before the warranty period expires. The upgrade charge will be prorated for the remaining warranty period. The charge will be billed annually.

IBM Warranty Service, Maintenance Service, and IBM Hourly Service may be obtained by calling the IBM Service/Exchange Communications Center at 1-800-428-2569. IBM Hourly Service is available at the applicable rate and terms, including element exchange price if applicable.

### Terms and Conditions

#### *Mid-Range System Amendment*

The 3299 Terminal Multiplexer is an eligible machine for the Mid-Range System Amendment to IBM Maintenance Agreement.

Eligible Types	Discount Percent	
	Three Year	Five Year
3299	12%	17%

#### *Corporate Service Amendment*

The 3299 Terminal Multiplexer is an eligible machine for the Corporate Service Amendment to IBM Maintenance Agreement.

Option	Discount Percent		
	One Year	Three Year	Five Year
Network	2%	12%	17%

## **Charges**

### **Annual Minimum Maintenance Charges**

	IOE	COE
3299-001	\$23	\$13

Annual Minimum Maintenance Charges for the 3299-002 and 3299-003 will be announced at a later date. First shipments of the 3299-002 were in September 1985. First shipments of the 3299-003 were in June 1986. These products will not be eligible for post warranty service until September 1990 and June 1991, respectively.

### **Warranty Option Charges (Prorated over the remaining warranty period)**

	IOE
3299-001, 002, 003	\$50 (5 years of coverage)

### **IBM Hourly Service**

The IBM Hourly Rate Classification is: 1



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM System/88 Trial Program Extended

The IBM System/88 Trial Program, announced in IBM Marketing Announcement 386-048, dated April 29, 1986, is extended indefinitely; and is subject to withdrawal by IBM at any time, upon written notice. The list of eligible System/88 Trial System components is changed, as follows:

- The IBM 4975 Printer is deleted.

The following are added:

- IBM 4585 Magnetic Tape Unit
- IBM 4582 Disk SubSystem
- IBM 4224, 4245 Model 20, and 3812 Printers
- IBM System/88 Distributed Systems Services (5732-030)
- IBM System/88 Programming Editor (5732-033).

All other trial program terms and conditions remain as announced in IBM Marketing Announcement 386-048.

### Administrative Information

The following updated administrative instructions supersede those announced in Marketing Announcement 386-048.

Trial period products are available to qualified customers and prospects who are approved, in advance, through the nomination procedures announced for the specific trial program.

Further administrative instructions on trial program support are available in Memorandum to Administration Managers A87-006, dated January 28, 1987.

### Administrative Action Required

The customer must sign the Trial Period Amendment (TPA) (Z125-3833) prior to shipment of the trial products. To be eligible for the trial program, the customer must also have one or more of the following signed agreements on file (prior to the Trial Period Commencement Date):

- Agreement for Lease or Rental of IBM Machines (Z125-3320)
- Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines (Z120-2892)
- Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs (Z125-3358)

The following may be required if the machine(s) will be assigned to a third party:

- Assignment of IBM Machines (Z125-3085)

### Trial Period Amendment

#### Execution

To execute the TPA, indicate the following:

- The Agreements to which the Amendment applies (Purchase, Lease/Rental, Licensed Programs)
- Machine or licensed program type and model numbers
- Machine or licensed program quantity
- Plant order or serial number(s)
- Trial period duration (one, two, three, or six months).

Have the customer sign the TPA and present it to branch management for acceptance.

Note: The TPA number ("Amendment No.:") may be used by the branch office as a cross-reference for the "Control Log Number" on the required IBM Trial Program Control Log.

#### Distribution

Upon receiving management approval, distribute the document, as follows:

- Original and Customer Copy -- Return to the customer as an acknowledgement of the order and trial period eligibility.
- Branch Office Copy -- Upon notification of shipment, annotate serial numbers and file with purchase or lease/rental package.

Note: ISD does not send shipment notices; use UER to obtain shipment date.

- CMR Department Copy -- Annotate the serial numbers and forward to the appropriate NSD office with the following typed: "All products have been approved for a (indicate number of months) - month trial program".

### Assignment of IBM Machines

The customer is responsible for notifying IBM prior to the end of the trial period that trial products are not being retained. The Assignment of IBM Machines must be signed by the User and the Purchaser, and must be received (time-stamped) in the branch office no later than the last day of the trial period. Third parties may use different equity sources for trial and non-trial products; therefore, trial products must be placed on a separate supplement.

If the customer decides to assign the right to purchase the hardware to a third party:

- Execute the Assignment of IBM Machines (Z125-3085) and indicate in the space provided that an IBM Trial Period Amendment applies (A copy is included in Marketing Announcement 386-031 dated April 2, 1986)
- Follow normal branch office procedures for execution of the Supplement to Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines (Z125-3531).
- Upon acceptance by IBM of the above contracts, return copies of the Assignment and Supplement to the third party. These contracts must be returned to the third party no later than five days after the Date of Installation of the products, or no later than five days after the branch office receives the signed Assignment of IBM Machines, whichever is later.
- Prepare an Installation Advice Form. Type "The products herein are subject to a (indicate number of months) -month IBM Trial Period Amendment" on the face of the IAF. Mail the form to the third party within five days of the Date of Installation of the trial products, or within five days after the branch office receives the signed Assignment of IBM Machines, whichever is later. Present the AAS-generated form to the third party when the installation is processed at the end of the trial period.

Questions regarding trial program administration for third parties should be directed to the appropriate Central Response Office (CRO).

#### **IBM Credit Corporation Contracts**

Responsibility for notifying IBM prior to the end of the trial period that the trial products are not being retained remains with the customer, not IBM Credit Corporation.

The Rent Commencement Date for trial products under an IBM Credit Corporation Term Lease will be the first work day, Monday through Friday, following the last day of the trial period.

The following contracts should be used in conjunction with the new Trial Period Amendment:

- Term Lease Master Agreement (Z125-3318)
- Term Lease Master Agreement - State and Local Government (Z125-3428)
- Term Lease Supplement (Z125-3319)

Contracts for Option A Upgrades, B, B Prime, G and G Prime equipment may be signed during the trial period. The following procedures apply:

- Term Lease Master Agreement (if applicable) must be signed by the customer and received in the Term Lease department prior to the end of the trial period.
- Term Lease Supplement must be signed by the customer and received in the Term Lease department prior to the end of the trial period.

#### **Installment Payment Agreement (IPA)**

The Installment Payment Agreement and the new Trial Period Amendment should be signed by the customer and received by IBM prior to the earliest actual installation date of the trial machines on the IPA. When a customer changes the method of acquisition from lease/rental to

purchase during the trial period, the IPA must be signed by the customer and received by IBM no later than the day following the last day of the trial period. All documentation must be received by Bethesda prior to the end of the five-day grace period.

Trial period machines may be placed on an IPA if all of the machines have the same trial period duration. Estimated shipment dates of all machines must be within one month of the earliest estimated shipment date, and must be installed within 21 calendar days from the latest estimated shipment date in effect when the IPA was received in the branch office.

The IPA effective date is the first work day, Monday through Friday, following the latest trial period end date of the equipment included in the IPA.

The following contracts must be used in conjunction with the Trial Period Amendment:

- IBM Installment Payment Agreement (Z120-7384)
- IBM Installment Payment Agreement - State and Local Government (Z120-2791)
- Supplement to Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines (Z125-3531)

#### **Ordering Information**

The customer may order trial period configurations by issuing an authorization to enter a new order, and by signing the IBM Trial Period Amendment (Z125-3833-0).

Equipment should be ordered as new. Equipment ordered as purchase must be pended via PURPREP prior to shipment. Equipment ordered as lease must remain as lease, and may not be installed until final disposition of the trial equipment is known.

Returned trial products may not be applied to another trial program order.

If the customer elects to add the order to an existing VPA, VLA, QDA, or Special Bid, ensure that the special contract number is loaded to the plant order number(s).

The following information should be entered into the branch Trial Program Control Log:

- Control log number (TPA number)
- Customer number/name
- Trial period configuration (machine/program types/models)
- Plant order number(s)
- Estimated shipment date(s)
- Marketing representative

#### **Installation**

- Upon installation, process PINSTALL to ensure that the equipment will be removed from the UER and that the actual duration will be correctly calculated.

Non-inventory products are considered installed at the target date; therefore, the trial duration is determined from the target date calculated from the shipment record. The order will remain available on the backlog for the duration of the trial and grace periods to allow for cancellation activity (OMCANCEL).



- Leave non-Personal Computer licensed programs in status 20 until the end of the trial period. Do not put in a status 14 or 10 at this time.
- Update the branch Trial Program Control Log to include serial number(s), actual date of installation, meter readings (if applicable), and trial period end date.
- Update the Trial Period Amendment by annotating the serial number(s) in the space provided on the Amendment.

#### **Billing/Accounts Receivable**

- If purchase billing is generated, submit an ARFAT to the appropriate processing location to administratively code the invoices as current for the trial period. Copies of the invoices and Trial Period Amendments, with annotated serial numbers and the Trial Period Amendment effective date, must be attached to the ARFAT.

**Note:** Invoices for less than \$20,000 cannot be coded as current.

#### **Business Measurements**

All requests for relief on business measurements for trial period products should be directed to your Area.

#### **Warranty/Maintenance**

For equipment under warranty, the branch should solicit maintenance prior to the end of the trial period. For equipment retained by the customer at the end of the trial period, the signed Maintenance Agreement will eliminate potential service-call billing issues.

No further action is required until the end of the trial period, or until the customer notifies IBM of a decision to return the products, whichever occurs first.

#### **Final Disposition**

##### **Retained Equipment**

If by the trial period expiration date, the customer has not notified IBM, in writing, that he is returning the equipment, the equipment will be referred to as retained. The branch should present all purchase invoices to the customer. Payment for these purchases is due the day following the expiration of the trial period.

**Installment Payment Agreement (IPA):** The IPA effective date is the first work day, Monday through Friday, following the latest trial period end date of the equipment included on the IPA.

**Special Contracts (VPAs, VLA, QDAs, and Special Bids):** Trial products are eligible for discounts against a purchase price or one-time charge, provided the contract period commencement date of the applicable contract is no later than the day following the last day of the trial period.

Upon receipt of the signed special contracts from the customer, normal branch office procedures should be followed for the acceptance and registration of these special contracts.

**Lease or Rental:** Process the retroactive installation of the machine(s) via IRSTART and/or LRA, if applicable.

The lease/rental effective date (Date of Installation) is the date, Monday through Friday, following the actual installation date (code 20, or last day of CSU allowance period), not the date the trial period ends.

Payment is due under the terms of the lease/rental invoice.

**Licensed Programs (non-Personal Computer only):** Process the retroactive installation of the licensed program(s) via SWSTART. The installation effective date is 10 days after shipment of the licensed program from IBM, not the date the trial period ends.

If the licensed program carries a testing period, process the installation to reflect the testing period (status 14). For licensed programs that do not carry a testing period, the installation is to be processed to reflect no testing period (status 10).

Payment is due under the terms of the system-generated invoice.

**Personal Computer Licensed Programs:** Personal Computer licensed programs must be pended via PURPREP.

#### **Returned Equipment**

- If the customer decides to return the equipment to IBM, process OMCANCEL to reflect the proper status of the products. Process CANCLINV to remove leased equipment from status 20. Purchase inventory products must be released via PURPREP to remove them from the billing path, and to update the inventory.
- If the customer is returning non-AAS inventory products, "proof-of-receipt" documentation (RMER) that the trial products have been returned to the Distribution Returns Center must be received before processing PURPREP.
- For machines covered by the Assignment of IBM Machines, the user is responsible for notifying IBM prior to the end of the trial period that the trial products are not being retained.
- If the installation for licensed programs was processed in error, and the programs currently exist in a status 14, process DISC to prevent generation of billing. Do not process DELAY.
- Licensed program materials must be destroyed. A licensed program destruction letter must be sent to the customer.
- The dispatch notification (IDAC) for equipment being returned to IBM must indicate "Trial Period Equipment" and the trial program duration (one, two, three, or six months) in the comments section.
- Annotate the return date of the trial products in the Trial Program Control Log.
- Full reimbursement to NSD for removal preparation is the responsibility of the branch office. NSD should promptly inspect and prepare the equipment for removal. NSD service representatives should record their time under sales assistance service code 47, and charge the responsible marketing branch office number.

- Returned trial products may not be applied to another trial program order, and should be returned to the plant of manufacture.

The branch office is responsible for absorbing the destination and rework charges on all returned equipment, if applicable.

**Sponsoring Executive**

W. L. Wilson  
Group Director, Large Systems Management



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Revised Exhibit-Alternative Certification for IBM Machines

IBM is announcing a revised Exhibit to the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines. Under this revised Exhibit, the IBM 4055 InfoWindow Display and 4683 Point of Sale Terminal are added to the list of machines which are not Eligible Machines under the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines. The revised Exhibit is effective immediately.

### Marketing Information

The Alternative Certification for IBM Machines allows for the resale of certain machines (Eligible Machines) purchased from IBM at single-unit purchase prices. For the purchase of such Eligible Machines, the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines eliminates the requirement for End-User Certification. The Alternative Certification for IBM Machines need only be signed once by a purchaser and, therefore, applies to all purchases of Eligible Machines at single-unit purchase prices.

### Administrative Information

#### *Administrative Action Required*

**Alternative Certification for IBM Machines:** The revised Exhibit - Alternative Certification for IBM Machines No. 84-33, included in this announcement, replaces the prior Exhibit and is effective immediately.

The Notice to IBM Customers for Alternative Certification, included in this announcement, is to be reproduced locally. Send it and the revised Exhibit to all customers who have an Alternative Certification for IBM Machines in effect as shown in the branch contract control log. Prepare a mailing control list and file locally to document notification.

### Attachment Information

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 387-219-1A\* Z125-3573-32 Alternative Certification for IBM Machines
- 387-219-1B\* Notice to IBM Customers (Revised Exhibit-Alternative Certification for IBM Machines)

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

D. O. Stoner  
Group Director, Business Practices Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## **Notice to IBM Customers**

December 15, 1987

### **Revised Exhibit-Alternative Certification for IBM Machines**

IBM has announced a revised Exhibit to the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines. Under this revised Exhibit, the IBM 4055 InfoWindow Display and 4683 Point of Sale Terminal are added to the list of machines which are not Eligible Machines under the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines. The revised Exhibit is attached to this Notice and is effective immediately.

Please contact your IBM marketing representative should you require additional information.

**EXHIBIT**  
**Alternative Certification for IBM Machines****Exhibit No.: 84-33**  
**December 15, 1987**

In accordance with the Alternative Certification for IBM Machines, Eligible Machines are defined as all machines marketed by the International Business Machines Corporation except the following:

**IBM PROCESSING UNITS**

3031, 3032, 3033, 3017, 3027, 3036, 3037, 3038, 3041 and 3042  
4321, 4331, 4341, 4361 and 4381  
4575 and 4576  
4950, 4952, 4954, 4955 and 4956  
5324  
5340  
5360, 5362, 5363 and 5364  
5381 and 5382  
4860, 5140, 5150, 5155, 5160, 5162, 5170, 5171, 5531, 7532, 7552, 8530, 8550, 8560 and 8580  
6150 and 6151  
6580  
5525  
8130, 8140 and 8150  
3651  
4701 and 4702  
5085  
7361  
9001 and 9002  
9373, 9375 and 9377

**OTHER IBM MACHINES**

1586	5083	6154
3101	5084	6155
3117	5087	6157
3118	5088	6182
3151	5144	6186
3161	5145	6360
3162	5151	6361
3163	5152	6700
3164	5153	6701
3193	5154	6705
3197	5161	6713
3363	5167	6714
3812	5169	6715
3852	5173	6723
4055	5175	6724
4201	5178	6731
4202	5181	6733
4207	5182	6745
4208	5201	6746
4210	5202	6747
4216	5208	6750
4245	5209	6755
4248	5215	6770
4683	5216	6780
4707	5218	7534
4708	5223	8218
4712	5228	8219
4717	5271	8228
4718	5272	8503
4721	5279	8512
4722	5299	8513
4732	5371	8514
4863	5379	9309
4865	5532	9332
4869	6126	9335
4971	6153	9347
5081		

IBM may revise the Exhibit from time to time in writing and without prior notice.



Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

# Marketing Announcement

December 15, 1987

## IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner VPA Withdrawal

Effective December 15, 1987, IBM is withdrawing the 3687 from the Volume Procurement Amendment Agreement. Discounts for the 3687 will be offered via special bid for minimum quantities of 200 in 12 months; 400 in 24 months; or 600 in 36 months or greater. IBM 3687 and IBM 1520 Hand-held Scanner quantities will continue to be aggregated for purposes of fulfilling 1520 and 3687 quantity commitments.

### Marketing Information

Existing 3687 VPAs will be honored through the expiration date of the agreement contract period.

Effective December 15, 1987, no new VPA contracts for the 3687 will be accepted.

Special bids for the 3687 discounts for minimum quantities of at least 200 in 12 months; 400 in 24 months; or 600 in 36 months will be accepted.

Continued quantity aggregation of the 3687 with the 1520 will be made for purposes of fulfilling 1520 and 3687 quantity commitments.

### Administrative Information

By January 15, 1988, inform all customers of the 3687 VPA withdrawal and special bid availability.

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers within 10 days of this announcement.

**Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA):** The IBM Store Systems Products, Exhibit STOR-2, Form Number Z125-3998 included in this announcement, must be used for all new VPAs effective immediately and should be obtained from the DAWN System.

### Attachment Information

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 187-220-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner Volume Procurement Amendment Withdrawal
- 187-220-1B\* Z125-3998 IBM Store Systems Products VPA Exhibit

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

R. W. Clark  
General Manager, Services Sector

**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM Store Systems Products**  
**Volume Procurement Amendment to**  
**Agreement for Purchase of IBM Machines**

**Exhibit No.: STOR-1**  
**December 15, 1981**

1. ELIGIBLE MACHINES:

Category A

4683 Terminal

Category B

1520 Hand-held Scanner

2. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE AND AVAILABLE CONTRACT PERIOD DURATIONS:

Minimum Quantity of Eligible Machines by Category			Discount Percent	
Duration (Months)			Categories	
12	24	36	A†	B
100†	200†	300	*	4%
150†	300	450	12%	4%
200†	400	600	12%	10%
250†	500	750	12%	10%
300	600	900	18%	16%
500	1000	1500	20%	22%
750	1500	2250	22%	
1000	2000	3000	24%	

\* Not applicable to this Category

† In Category A, discounts are not available for quantities less than 300.

Features ordered for field installation on an IBM 4683 Terminal in Category A are eligible for a discount provided they are acquired during the Contract Period of a Volume Commitment for Category A. The Discount Percent for such features shall be equal to the machine Discount Percent applicable to Category A. Price protection provisions for such features shall be the same as for machines.

3. PRICE PROTECTION-UPPER LIMIT PERCENT: First Year of Contract Period: 0%; Remainder of Contract Period: 7%.

4. PILOT TEST OPTION: At the Customer's option, the Contract Period of a Volume Commitment for Eligible Machines included in this Exhibit may be immediately preceded by a Pilot Test Period of no more than nine months in duration during which the Customer may purchase a limited number of such Eligible Machines for testing and evaluation prior to commencing such Contract Period. The Customer's election of the Pilot Test Option will be specified by Category in the applicable Addendum. The following provisions amend and/or add to the provisions of the Volume Procurement Amendment in respect to Volume Commitments for which the Customer has elected the Pilot Test Option (affected Volume Commitments).

The Pilot Test Period will begin on the Pilot Test Period Commencement Date and have a Pilot Test Period Duration, both of which are specified in the applicable Addendum, unless the Customer elects to commence the Contract Period of the affected Volume Commitment early or elects to terminate the Pilot Test Period, as provided in this Exhibit. The Pilot Test Period Commencement Date is the date specified by the Customer in the applicable Addendum which is within three months following the Receipt Date of such Addendum.

The number of machines which may be acquired during the Pilot Test Period will be specified in the applicable Addendum and will not exceed 5% of the Total Quantity of Products by Category specified in the Addendum for the affected Volume Commitment. Machines acquired during the Pilot Test Period will not count toward the Total Quantity of Products by Category for such Volume Commitment.

For each machine acquired during the Pilot Test Period, the Customer will pay the single unit purchase price in effect on the applicable Receipt Date (subject to increase in accordance with the Section entitled "Price Protection Period" in the applicable Purchase Agreement) less the applicable discount which is calculated by using the Discount Schedule in this Exhibit and applying the Total Quantity of Products by Category and the Contract Period Duration applicable to the affected Volume Commitment, as specified in the Addendum, to determine the applicable Minimum Quantity of Machines by Category and its associated Discount Percent. However, any Revised Total Quantity of Products by Category included in a Supplement for Additional Quantities signed prior to the Commencement Date of the affected Volume Commitment shall not apply to machines purchased during the Pilot Test Period.

The Customer, upon written notification to IBM at any time during the Pilot Test Period, may elect to commence the Contract Period of the affected Volume Commitment early. Such early Contract Period Commencement Date shall be the later of the date such written notification is received by IBM or the date requested by the Customer in such notification which is prior to the expiration of the Pilot Test Period, and the last day of the Pilot Test Period will be deemed to be the day prior to such Commencement Date.

The Contract Period of the affected Volume Commitment will commence automatically on the day following expiration of the Pilot Test Period unless the Customer terminates the Pilot Test Period and cancels the affected Volume Commitment upon written notification to IBM during such Pilot Test Period. In the event of such cancellation, the Customer agrees to pay applicable Adjustment Charges, if any, for the machines acquired during the Pilot Test Period based upon the applicable Minimum Quantity of Machines by Category shown in this Exhibit for a 12-month Contract Period Duration and applying the actual number of machines acquired to determine the applicable Discount Percent.

The Commencement Date of the Contract Period of an affected Volume Commitment will be the day following the last day of the Pilot Test Period, unless such Pilot Test Period is terminated by the Customer as provided in this Exhibit, and its Contract Period Duration shall be the available Contract Period Duration selected from this Exhibit and specified in the applicable Addendum. The single unit purchase price to be used for calculation of the Upper Limit for products acquired during such Contract Period shall be the single unit purchase price generally in effect for such products on such Commencement Date.

If, at the end of the Contract Period of an affected Volume Commitment, the Customer has failed to acquire the Minimum Quantity in the Committed Category during such Contract Period, the Customer agrees to pay applicable Adjustment Charges for the machines acquired during both the Pilot Test Period and the Contract Period based upon the number of machines acquired during the Contract Period.





# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Price Changes IBM 3820 Page Printer

Today, IBM is announcing increases in the Purchase Price, Minimum Maintenance Charge (MMC), Additional Maintenance Charge Rate (AMCR), and the Monthly Use Charge Rate (MUCR) for the IBM 3820 Model 1, and selected features. The Notice to IBM Customers, which itemizes these price changes and their effective dates, is included in this announcement.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives are to review these price changes with their customers as appropriate. Outstanding purchase quotations, trade-in quotations, bids and proposals, along with any related financial analyses must be updated and customers notified. Term Lease Agreements and Installment Payment Agreements for machines purchased on or after December 15, 1987, must be reviewed and, where applicable, recalculated.

#### Administrative Information

For machines that have shipped prior to and have a Date of Installation on or after December 15, 1987, the branch office must release billing using the mnemonic PURPREP to ensure proper price recalculation.

#### Administrative Action Required

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers not later than December 28, 1987.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the Notice to IBM Customers are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**Federal Government Customers:** Federal government customers and authorized federal government cost-reimbursement prime contractors are sent the Notice to IBM Customers for information purposes only. Products and services are subject to the terms and conditions and prices of the applicable IBM/federal government contract.

Questions concerning these contracts should be directed to National Federal Marketing, Federal Schedule Contracts, Bethesda, MD, (301) 564-2273 or T/L 238-2273.

**Additional Copies:** If additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are required, reproduce locally. They also may be obtained from the DAWN system.

#### Price Review Procedure

Customer pricing situations that cannot be resolved at the local level and questions regarding this announcement should be submitted to your field marketing practices advisor.

#### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 387-221-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Price Changes IBM 3820 Page Printer

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

#### Sponsoring Executive

D. O. Stoner  
Group Director, Business Practices Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### **Price Changes IBM 3820 Page Printer**

Today, IBM is announcing increases in the Purchase Price, Minimum Maintenance Charge (MMC), Additional Maintenance Charge Rate (AMCR), and the Monthly Use Charge Rate (MUCR) for the IBM 3820 Model 1, and selected features.

In accordance with the applicable IBM agreements, and/or supplements, the effective dates of the price changes are as follows:

**Purchase Price Increase:** The new, higher purchase price is effective December 15, 1987, except that the old price applies when the customer's written order for on-order machines was received by IBM on or before December 14, 1987, and the on-order equipment will be shipped on or before March 14, 1988.

#### **State and Local Government Customers**

The increased purchase price does not apply to state and local government customers whose order for machines was received by IBM on or before December 14, 1987, for the time period up to and including the Estimated Shipment Date.

In addition, the following provisions apply to machines purchased under a Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA):

Machines shipped during the first year of the VPA contract period will not be subject to any increases to the single-unit purchase price in effect on the receipt date of the VPA.

Machines shipped during the second through and including the fourth year of the VPA contract period will be subject to increases of up to 7% of the single-unit purchase price in effect on the receipt date of the VPA.

For special bid customers, the price protection provisions of the applicable special bid volume procurement amendment will apply.

**Maintenance Price Increases:** Increased monthly maintenance charges and usage charge rates will be effective April 1, 1988.

#### **State and Local Government Customers**

Those state and local government customers whose fiscal year begins January 1, 1988, will not be affected until January 1, 1989, by increases to monthly charges for IBM maintenance service.

For other state and local government customers, the new monthly charges for IBM maintenance service will be effective April 1, 1988, or at the beginning of the customer's next fiscal year after January 1, 1988, whichever is later.

The old and new prices and charges follow:

Machine Type	Description	Purchase Price Old	Price New
3820-001	IBM 3820 Page Printer	\$28,350	\$31,185

Mach Type	Model/ Feature	Description	Monthly MMC Old	New	AMCR/MUCR* Old	New
3820	001	Page Printer	\$310	\$356	\$.0126	\$.0144
	3010	Pattern Storage-512Kb	20	23		
	3020	Pattern Storage-1024Kb	40	46		
	3025	Pattern Storage-2048Kb	80	92		
	3030	Pattern Storage-3072Kb	120	138		
	3050	EIA Interface Attachment	10	11		
	3055	S/370 Channel Inter. AT	40	46		
	3065	Pattern Storage-4096Kb	160	184		

\* AMCR/MUCR is the monthly usage charge rate per copy.

Should you require additional information, please contact your IBM marketing representative.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Price Changes IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program

Today, IBM is announcing increases to the One-Time Charge and Monthly License Charge for the IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program (5719-YT7). The Notice to IBM Customers, which itemizes these price changes and their effective dates, is included in this announcement.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives are to review these price changes with their customers as appropriate. Outstanding bids and proposals, along with any related financial analyses must be updated and customers notified.

Financing Agreements for licensed programs which are installed on or after December 15, 1987, must be reviewed and, if applicable, recalculated.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers not later than December 28, 1987.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the Notice to IBM Customers are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**Federal Government Customers:** Federal government customers and authorized federal government cost-reimbursement prime contractors are sent the Notice to IBM Customers for information purposes only. Products and services are subject to the terms and conditions and prices of the applicable IBM/federal government contract.

Questions concerning these contracts should be directed to National Federal Marketing, Federal Schedule Contracts, Bethesda, MD, (301) 564-2027 or T/L 238-2027.

**Additional Copies:** If additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are required, reproduce locally. They also may be obtained from the DAWN system.

### Price Review Procedure

Customer pricing situations that cannot be resolved at the local level and questions regarding this announcement should be submitted to your field marketing practices advisor.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 387-222-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Price Changes IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

D. O. Stoner  
Group Director, Business Practices Management



## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Price Changes IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program

Today, IBM is announcing increases to the One-Time Charge and Monthly License Charge for the IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program (5719-YT7).

In accordance with the applicable IBM agreements, and/or supplements, the effective dates of the price changes are as follows:

Increased Monthly License Charges (MLC) will be effective April 1, 1988.

Increased One-Time Charges (OTC) will be effective December 15, 1987, except that such increases will not apply to licensed programs for which the customer's written order was received by IBM on or before December 14, 1987, and which are either shipped on or before February 1, 1988, or, for additional licenses, if the effective date occurs on or before February 1, 1988.

In addition, the following provisions apply to licensed programs accepted under a Volume Procurement Agreement for Machines and Programs (VPA) or Volume License Amendment (VLA):

- Programs shipped during the first of the year of the VPA or VLA Contract Period and additional licenses with an effective date during the first year of the VPA or VLA Contract Period will not be subject to any increases to the one-time charge in effect on the receipt date of the VPA or VLA.
- Programs shipped during the second year of the VPA or VLA Contract Period and additional licenses with an effective date during the second year of the VPA or VLA Contract Period will be subject to increases of up to 7% of the one-time charge in effect on the receipt date of the VPA or VLA.

For special bid customers, the price protection provisions of the applicable special bid quantity discount agreement apply.

### State and Local Government Customers

Those state and local government customers whose fiscal year begins January 1, 1988, will not be affected by increases to charges until January 1, 1989. For other state and local government customers, the new Monthly License Charges will be effective April 1, 1988, or at the beginning of the customer's next fiscal year after January 1, 1988, whichever is later. The new One-Time Charge will be effective December 15, 1987, or at the beginning of the customer's next fiscal year after January 1, 1988, whichever is later.

The old and new charges follow:

Program Number	Description	One-Time-Charge		Monthly License Charge	
		Old	New	Old	New
5719-YT7	Store Application Environment	\$19,537	\$19,977	\$1,278	\$1,352

Should you require additional information, please contact your IBM marketing representative.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Price Change IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner

Today, IBM is announcing an increase in the Purchase Price for the Scratch-Resistant Window feature for the IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner. The Notice to IBM Customers, which itemizes this price change and its effective dates, is included in this announcement.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives are to review this price change with their customers as appropriate. Outstanding purchase quotations, trade-in quotations, bids and proposals, along with any related financial analyses must be updated and customers notified. Term Lease Agreements and Installment Payment Agreements for machines purchased on or after December 15, 1987, must be reviewed and, where applicable, recalculated.

### Administrative Information

For machines that have shipped prior to and have a Date of Installation on or after December 15, 1987, the branch office must release billing using the mnemonic PURPREP to ensure proper price recalculation.

#### Administrative Action Required

**Customer Notification:** Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification directly from headquarters, have been mailed a copy of the Notice to IBM Customers.

Customers affected by this announcement, who have been designated by the branch office to receive notification from the branch office, must be sent the Notice to IBM Customers not later than December 28, 1987.

A customer notification control list of the customers affected by this announcement and a reproducible copy of the Notice to IBM Customers are being mailed under separate cover. Branches must use the sample MMS inquiry provided with the listing and/or local records to identify activity that has occurred since the file status date of the control listing.

**Federal Government Customers:** Federal government customers and authorized federal government cost-reimbursement prime contractors are sent the Notice to IBM Customers for information purposes only. Products and services are subject to the terms and conditions and prices of the applicable IBM/federal government contract.

Questions concerning these contracts should be directed to National Federal Marketing, Federal Schedule Contracts, Bethesda, MD, (301) 564-2273 or T/L 238-2273.

**Additional Copies:** If additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are required, reproduce locally. They also may be obtained from the DAWN system.

#### Price Review Procedure

Customer pricing situations that cannot be resolved at the local level and questions regarding this announcement should be submitted to your field marketing practices advisor.

### Attachment Information

The following attachment is related to this announcement letter:

- 387-223-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Price Change IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner

\* The attachment marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### Sponsoring Executive

D.O. Stoner  
Group Director, Business Practices Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Price Change IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner

Today, IBM is announcing an increase in the Purchase Price for the Scratch-Resistant Window feature for the IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner.

In accordance with the applicable IBM agreements, and/or supplements, the effective dates of the price change are as follows:

The new, higher purchase price is effective December 15, 1987, except that the old price applies when the customer's written order for on-order machines was received by IBM on or before December 14, 1987, and the on-order equipment will be shipped on or before March 14, 1988.

#### State and Local Government Customers

The increased purchase price does not apply to state and local government customers whose order for machines was received by IBM on or before December 14, 1987, for the time period up to and including the Estimated Shipment Date.

In addition, the following provisions apply to features for machines purchased under a Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA):

Machines shipped during the first year of the VPA contract period will not be subject to any increases to the single-unit purchase price in effect on the receipt date of the VPA.

Machines shipped during the second through and including the fourth year of the VPA contract period will be subject to increases of up to 7% of the single-unit purchase price in effect on the receipt date of the VPA.

For special bid customers, the price protection provisions of the applicable special bid volume procurement amendment will apply.

The old and new prices follow:

Machine Type	Feature	Description	Purchase Price	
			Old	New
3687	3005	Scratch-Resistant Window	\$195	\$240

Should you require additional information, please contact your IBM marketing representative.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## InfoWindow Support for Personal System/2™ Models 50 and 60

IBM announces a limited promotion for customers wishing to attach the IBM 4055 InfoWindow Display to a Personal System/2 Model 50 or 60. During the period November 3, 1987 through December 31, 1987, any customer who purchases two PS/2 Models 50/60, two 4055s, and places an order for one InfoWindow Attachment Kit (#4239), will receive a second kit at no additional charge (current list price, \$1,050). The kit ordered by the customer will be shipped upon general availability, at which time the customer will be invoiced at the applicable price for the kit.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

### Marketing Information

#### Marketing Channels

- NCMD
- SWMD
- NDD
- Approved InfoWindow VADs

#### Marketing Action Required

Marketing representatives should review this promotional offering with their interested customers. Questions and answers are attached to help clarify this announcement. The Notice to IBM Customers, included in this announcement, may be given to your customers.

In addition to this announcement, a letter will be distributed to all MAPs, VADs, and IBM account executives. Advanced Education Systems representatives will also be in contact with the account executives to assist in developing an action plan for their customers to take advantage of this promotion.

### Terms and Conditions

For every two 4055 InfoWindow Displays shipped with two PS/2 Models 50 or 60 on or after November 3, 1987 and on or before December 31, 1987, and for all such orders received by IBM on or after November 3, 1987 and on or before December 31, 1987, one InfoWindow Attachment Kit (#4239) will be provided at no charge. Requests for deferred shipments will not be accepted and shipment dates cannot be longer than the current published schedules. A second InfoWindow Attachment Kit must be placed on order by the customer concurrently with the system units and displays, and will be shipped to the customer upon general availability and invoiced at the applicable price for this kit.

- The no-charge attachment kits will be shipped to each customer directly from Advanced Education

Systems marketing in Atlanta, GA and will not be pre-installed in the PS/2 Model 50/60.

- Eligible products ordered under this promotion count towards VPA commitments.
- Customers with VPAs in effect will receive applicable VPA discounts on eligible products included in this announcement.
- Customers who qualify for Education Allowances will receive applicable education allowances on eligible products included in this announcement.
- CFO provisions apply to this announcement.

**Eligibility:** Commercial and educational customers.

### Administrative Information

#### Administrative Action Required

The customer must have at least one PS/2 Model 50 or Model 60 on order with each 4055 to qualify for this promotional offering. The 4055 must have the same estimated shipment date and system number as the PS/2.

The InfoWindow Attachment Kits for which the customer will be charged should be placed on order concurrently with the system units and displays, but should be ordered separately under Special Ordering Vehicle 8550-ZZZ. The customer will receive these kits at general availability.

MES orders for kits to attach presently installed InfoWindow Displays to PS/2 Models 50 or 60 will be available for shipment only after general availability and are not eligible for this promotion.

During the promotion period, Advanced Education Systems marketing will accept orders from customers who wish to purchase one InfoWindow Attachment Kit outside of the promotion (at the current unit price), or from customers who wish to purchase a kit with a PS/2 (at the current unit price), or from customers who wish to attach presently installed 4055s to a PS/2 Model 50 or 60 via an Attachment Kit (at the current unit price). Advanced Education Systems will maintain a sequential listing of these customers and schedule their orders for shipment upon general availability. Loaner cards will be made available prior to general availability from the limited availability supply upon request of a customer; these loaner cards must be controlled by Advanced Education Systems and be returned by the customer to Advanced Education Systems upon general availability.

During this promotion, Advanced Education Systems, ISG Atlanta, will send the Attachment Kits and supporting documentation directly to the customers.



Any question regarding this promotion should be addressed to Don Salo, Advanced Education Systems at 597-2338 (IBM dial network) or (404) 988-2338.

#### **Attachment Information**

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 387-224-1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Limited Offer: IBM InfoWindow and Personal System/2™ Models 50 and 60 Promotion
- 387-224-1B Questions and Answers

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

J. E. Dezell, Jr.  
General Manager, IBM Education Systems



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

---

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Limited Offer: IBM InfoWindow and Personal System/2™ Models 50 and 60 Promotion

Today IBM is announcing a limited promotional offering for customers wishing to attach the IBM 4055 InfoWindow Display to a Personal System/2 Model 50 or 60. During the period November 3, 1987 through December 31, 1987, any customer who purchases two PS/2 Models 50/60, two 4055s, and places an order for one InfoWindow Attachment Kit (#4239), will receive a second kit at no additional charge (current list price \$1,050).

This offering is in effect for IBM InfoWindow Display units shipped by IBM on or after November 3, 1987, and on or before December 31, 1987, and for all such orders received by IBM on or after November 3, 1987 or on or before December 31, 1987, subject to the following provisions:

- A minimum of two 4055s to be attached to PS/2 Models 50 and 60 must be shipped during the promotional period.
- the 4055s must be either shipped with PS/2 Models 50 or 60 on or after November 3, 1987, or the order must be received by IBM on or prior to December 31, 1987. The shipment dates cannot be longer than the current published delivery schedule. Eligible products cannot be deferred.
- For every two systems shipped, one InfoWindow Attachment Kit (#4239) which contains the two cards required to attach one PS/2 Model 50 or 60 to one 4055 will be provided at no additional charge. The attachment kits for the remaining half of the systems must be ordered by the customer and will be shipped after General Availability and invoiced at the applicable price.
- The no-charge kits with supporting documentation will be shipped directly to the customer by Advanced Education Systems, in Atlanta, and will not be pre-installed in the PS/2.
- This promotion is available to all qualifying commercial and education customers. It is effective only during the time period specified and is subject to withdrawal at any time upon written notice from IBM.

For additional information, contact your IBM marketing representative.

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

1Q. Why is IBM having a promotion on the InfoWindow Display at this time?

1A. Many of IBM's customers and prospects have shown a great interest in the InfoWindow Display and have been investigating its use in a wide variety of applications. The promotion is intended to accelerate the decision process for organizations that have invested significant time with the product.

Additionally, this incentive can overcome delays in customer selection of the PS/2 Model 50 and 60 as the systems unit base for the InfoWindow Display.

2Q. Can we expect future InfoWindow promotions?

2A. IBM currently has no additional promotions planned for the InfoWindow Display.

3Q. Can customers borrow additional Attachment Kits so they can use all the InfoWindow Systems with P/S2 Models 50 or 60 installed during the promotion?

3A. Yes, if requested by the customer, Advanced Education Systems will provide loaner Attachment Kits until General Availability to allow customers to use all the systems. Otherwise, the customer will receive only half the cards through the promotion and the remaining cards will arrive after General Availability.

4Q. Can a customer who has InfoWindow Displays presently installed qualify for the no-charge kits if PS/2 Model 50s or 60s are ordered and installed to work with them?

4A. No, the intent of the promotion is to encourage installation of new InfoWindow Displays with new PS/2 Model 50s or 60s.

5Q. If a customer already has PS/2 Models 50 or 60 on order and wants to install them with on-order InfoWindow Displays, can they qualify for the no-charge Attachment Kits?

5A. Yes. Advanced Education Systems will monitor all on-order InfoWindow Displays and contact the responsible marketing team to insure that all the terms and conditions for this promotion are satisfied.



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## Withdrawal from Marketing Program Service Changes

Effective March 15, 1988, the following programs, licensed under the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs, are withdrawn from marketing.

Program Number	Program Name
5719-PC6	Series/1 Realtime Programming System Version 6
5719-XS4	Series/1 EDX Supervisor/Emulator Version 4
5719-PC5	Series/1 Realtime Programming System Version 5
5719-XJ5*	Series/1 EDX Version 5 for Series/1 System Unit
5719-PJ7*	Series/1 RPS Version 7 for Series/1 System Unit
5719-CN1	Series/1 PC-Connect Version 1
5719-EM1	Series/1 Input/Output Executive Version 1
5719-AM2	Series/1 RPS Indexed Access Method Version 2
5719-AS6	Series/1 RPS Program Preparation Subsystem Version 6
5719-CM2	Series/1 Communications Monitor Version 2
5719-LM8	Series/1 EDX Macro Library Version 4
5740-LM5	Series/1 EDX Macro Library/Host Version 4
5719-RM6	Series/1 RPS Remote Manager Version 1
5719-XX5	Series/1 EDX Program Preparation Facility Version 4
5799-TDE	Series/1 Data Collection Interface
5799-TDK	Series/1 4963/4966 Save/Restore
5799-TEC	Series/1 Job Stream Processor
5799-TEF	Series/1 RPS SNA Remote Manager Utility
5799-TGZ	Series/1 CPS 4967 Support

\* Latest releases of the operating systems for the Series/1 System Unit.

## Program Services Discontinuance

Effective June 15, 1988, central service for the following programs, licensed under the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs, is discontinued:

Program Number	Program Name
5719-AM2	Series/1 RPS Indexed Access Method Version 2
5719-CM2	Series/1 RPS Communications Monitor Version 2
5719-SM1	Series/1 RPS Sort/Merge Version 1
5719-RM6	Series/1 RPS Remote Manager Version 1
5719-CA1	Series/1 RPS Channel Attach Support Version 1
5719-CS0	Series/1 RPS PCS Program Preparation Version 1
5719-CS2	Series/1 RPS PCS Extended Execution Support Version 1
5719-RJ6	Series/1 RPS ARJE Version 1
5719-CB7	Series/1 RPS COBOL Compiler and Resident Library Version 2
5719-CB8	Series/1 RPS COBOL Transient Library Version 2
5719-SX1	Series/1 EDX System Network Architecture Version 1
5719-SX2	Series/1 EDX System Network Architecture RJE Version 1
5719-CN1	Series/1 PC-Connect Version 1

## Program Currency

Program Services for the following licensed programs will be discontinued, effective March 31, 1988. These licensed programs will have a current release with central services available.

Program Number	Program Name	Version/Release
5719-AS7	Series/1 RPS Program Preparation Subsystem	Version 7 and Version 7 Release 1
5719-PC7	Series/1 Realtime Programming System	Version 7 and Version 7 Release 1
5719-PJ7	Series/1 RPS for Series/1 System Unit	Version 7 and Version 7 Release 1
5719-TR6	Series/1 RPS Transaction Processing System	Version 1 and Version 1 Release 1
5719-XS5	Series/1 RPS Event Driven Executive	Version 5 and Version 5 Release 1
5719-XX6	Series/1 EDX Program Preparation Facility	Version 5 and Version 5 Release 1
5719-LM9	Series/1 EDX Macro	Version 5 and

5740-LM6	Library Series/1 EDX Macro Library/Host	Version 5 Release 1 Version 5 and Version 5 Release 1
5719-XJ5	Series/1 EDX for Series/1 System Unit	Version 5 and Version 5 Release 1
5719-TR1	Series/1 EDX Transaction Processing System	Version 1 and Version 1 Release 1
5719-RM1	Series/1 EDX Remote Manager	Version 1 and Version 1 Release 1

Discontinuance dates for these programs were announced in the following IBM Programming Announcements:

- 285-087, 088, 090, 091, dated March 6, 1985
- 285-362, 372, 373, 374, dated October 1, 1985.

#### **Marketing Information**

**Withdrawal:** The withdrawal from marketing is effective March 15, 1988.

Orders for a withdrawn program will not be accepted via normal ordering procedures after March 15, 1988. Orders received after March 15, 1988 may be submitted in accordance with the procedures under the Withdrawal of Licensed Programs section in the General Information section of the ISG Sales Manual.

Those customers who have a withdrawn program installed and who wish to obtain another license for the program to run on an additional processor may accomplish this in accordance with the procedures under the Additional Identical Licenses section in the Software section of the Branch Office Manual.

The withdrawn programs will be removed from the VPA and VLA Exhibits for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs on March 15, 1988. See the attached Notice To IBM Customers for details.

**Program Services Discontinuance:** Central Service, including the IBM Support Center, will be discontinued, effective June 15, 1988.

APARs will be accepted up to June 15, 1988. At IBM's discretion, a final release may be sent to users of record that incorporates corrections for valid APARs received up to June 15, 1988.

APARs may be submitted after June 15, 1988, under the following conditions:

1. The APARs address problems resulting from software service changes made in the latest release of the program.
2. Submission must be within 90 days of the availability of the PTF or last release of the program from IBM Software Distribution.
3. These APARs will be handled in accordance with the program services provided prior to the date of the program services discontinuance.

**Program Currency:** Those licensed programs that have program services discontinued for specific releases effective March 31, 1988, have a current release with central services available.

#### **Marketing Action Required**

Notify those customers who have any of the affected licensed programs on order, and update outstanding proposals.

#### **Administrative Information**

##### **Program Services Discontinuance**

Effective December 15, 1987, current licensees of the affected programs will receive notification of the program services discontinuance directly from IBM Software Distribution.

For programs licensed after December 15, 1987, but before June 15, 1988, the discontinuance of program services and its effective date, in addition to the currently applicable program services, must be shown on the Supplement to the Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs.

GSA customers are subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable GSA Federal Supply Contracts. Refer questions to the National Federal Marketing, Federal Schedule Contracts, Bethesda, MD, (301) 564-2027 or 238-2027 (IBM dial network).

##### **Volume Discount**

The revised Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs Exhibit No. VP5719-2 is enclosed, and must be used for all new VPAs, effective immediately. No new VPAs or special bid contracts will be accepted for these withdrawn programs on or after the date of withdrawal. Additional copies are available through DAWN.

In addition, the revised Volume License Amendment Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs Exhibit No. LP5719-9 is enclosed. Additional copies are available through DAWN.

**VPA/VLA Transition:** The revisions to the exhibit apply automatically to customers who have VPAs or VLAs for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs in effect. The attached Notice to IBM Customers must be sent to existing VPA and VLA customers, but the revised exhibit should not be sent.

##### **Administrative Action Required**

**VPA/VLA Customer Notification:** Within 10 calendar days after announcement, the attached Notice to IBM Customers, but not the revised VPA and VLA Exhibit, must be mailed or hand-delivered by the branch office to all customers who have a VPA, VLA, or special bid for Series/1 licensed programs in effect.

This customer notification must be documented with a locally initiated control listing, documenting the mailing dates or, if hand-delivered, the date and name of the customer executive to whom the notice was delivered. File this control list locally for future reference to substantiate proof of customer notification.

Additional copies of the Notice to IBM Customers are available through DAWN.

##### **Request for Price Quotation**

Effective today, no new PRPQs will be accepted for programs in this announcement.

### **Attachment Information**

The following attachments are related to this announcement letter:

- 387-225 1A\* Notice to IBM Customers - Withdrawal from Marketing
- 387-225 1B\* Z125-4009-02 (VP5719-2) - Revised Volume Procurement Amendment Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs
- 387-225 1C\* Z125-3392-10 - Revised Volume License Amendment Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs

\* The attachments marked with an asterisk may be printed on your DAWN printer via either of the following two methods:

1. While browsing this announcement letter on HONE, enter the fastpath name "DAWNHOST LIST" (to allow selective printing from list) or "DAWNHOST ALL" (to print all asterisked attachments for this letter) at the HONE entry prompt arrow.
2. Go to the DAWN system in your branch and choose the menu option for Announcement Letter attachments.

### **Sponsoring Executive**

W. M. Stuek  
Group Director,  
Telecommunications Systems Management



International Business Machines Corporation  
Information Systems Group, 900 King Street, Rye Brook, New York 10573

## Notice to IBM Customers

December 15, 1987

### Withdrawal from Marketing

Effective March 15, 1988, the following licensed programs which are eligible for discounting under the Volume Procurement Amendment (VPA) Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs and the Volume License Amendment (VLA) Exhibit for IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs, are withdrawn from marketing:

Program Number	Program Name	VPA/VLA Category
5719-PC6	Series/1 Realtime Programming System Version 6	A
5719-XS4	Series/1 EDX Supervisor/Emulator Version 4	A
5719-PC5	Series/1 Realtime Programming System Version 5	A
5719-XJ5	Series/1 EDX Version 5 For Series/1 System Unit	A
5719-PJ7	Series/1 RPS Version 7 For Series/1 System Unit	A
5719-CN1	Series/1 PC-Connect Version 1	B
5719-EM1	Series/1 Input/Output Executive Version 1	B
5719-AM2	Series/1 RPS Indexed Access Method Version 2	B
5719-AS6	Series/1 RPS Program Preparation Subsystem Version 6	B
5719-CM2	Series/1 Communications Monitor Version 2	B
5719-LM8	Series/1 EDX Macro Library Version 4	B
5719-RM6	Series/1 RPS Remote Manager Version 1	B
5719-XX5	Series/1 EDX Program Preparation Facility Version 4	B
5799-TDE	Series/1 Data Collection Interface	B
5799-TDK	Series/1 4963/4966 Save/Restore	B
5799-TEC	Series/1 Job Stream Processor	B
5799-TEF	Series/1 RPS SNA Remote Manager Utility	B
5799-TGZ	Series/1 CPS 4967 Support	B

The withdrawn programs will be removed from the VPA and VLA Exhibits on March 15, 1988.

Orders for these licensed programs, to be shipped by IBM under a VPA or VLA, must be received by IBM before March 15, 1988. Requested delivery dates may be anytime within the VPA/VLA/Special Bid contract period.

If you have questions regarding this notification, please contact your IBM marketing representative.

**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs**  
**Volume Procurement Amendment**  
**to Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs**

**Exhibit No.: VP5719-2**  
**December 15, 1987**

**1. ELIGIBLE PROGRAMS:**

<u>Category</u>	<u>Eligible Programs</u>
A	5719-PC (ALL) Realtime Programming System
A	5719-XS (ALL) Event Driven Executive Basic Supervisor and Emulator
A	5719-U1 (ALL) Facility Control Power Management
A	5719-UN1 Interactive Executive
<sup>a</sup> A	5719-XJ (ALL) Event Driven Executive
<sup>a</sup> A	5719-PJ (ALL) Realtime Programming System
<sup>d</sup> B	5798-DRX Plant Automation Communication System
<sup>d</sup> B	5798-DZQ Plant Automation Communication System/Material Logistics System
<sup>d</sup> B	All 5719-XXX and 5799-XXX Licensed Programs which execute under control of Eligible Programs listed in Category A except the following: 5719-CR1 Structured Program Facility-MVS/VTAM 5719-CR2 Structured Program Facility-MVS/TCAM 5719-ED1 Structured Program Facility-Series/1 5719 YT7 Store Application Environment
C	5796-BDL
C	5796-RJT
C	5798-RGD
C	5798-RLW
C	5798-RRD
C	5798-RTE

<sup>a</sup> Orders for these Licensed Programs to be shipped by IBM must be received by IBM on or before March 15, 1988.

**2. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE AND AVAILABLE CONTRACT PERIOD DURATION:**

<u>Minimum Quantity of Eligible Programs by Category</u>	<u>Discount Percent</u>	
<u>Duration (Months)</u>	<u> ---Categories--- </u>	
<u>18</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>C</u>
5	7%	7%
10	10%	10%
20	17%	17%
35	22%	22%
50	28%	28%

<sup>d</sup> Dependent Categories:	<u>Dependent Category</u>	<u>Controlling Category</u>
	B	A



**EXHIBIT**  
**IBM Series/1 Licensed Programs**  
**Volume License Amendment**

**Exhibit No.: LP5719-10**  
**December 15, 1987**

1. CONTRACT PERIOD DURATION: 18 Months from Commencement Date

2. ELIGIBLE LICENSED PROGRAMS:

Category A	Category B	Category C
5719 PC (ALL) Realtime Programming System 5719 XS (ALL) Event Driven Executive Basic Supervisor and Emulator 5719 U1 (ALL) Facility Control Power Management 5719 UN1 Interactive Executive <sup>a</sup> 5719 XJ (ALL) Event Driven Executive <sup>a</sup> 5719 PJ (ALL) Realtime Programming System	5798-DRX Plant Automation Communication System, 5798-DZQ Plant Automation Communication System/Material Logistics System, all 5719-XXX Licensed Programs and 5799-XXX Licensed Programs which execute under control of Eligible Licensed Programs listed in Category A except the following: 5719-CR1 Structured Program Facility-MVS/VTAM 5719-CR2 Structured Program Facility-MVS/TCAM 5719-ED1 Structured Program Facility-Series/1 5719 YT7 Store Application Environment	5796-BDL 5796-RJT 5798-RGD 5798-RLW 5798-RRD 5798-RTE

<sup>a</sup> Orders for these Licensed Programs to be shipped by IBM must be received by IBM on or before March 15, 1988.

3. DISCOUNT SCHEDULE:

Discount Percent	Quantity of Eligible Licensed Programs		
	Category A	Category B	Category C
7%	5-9		5-9
10%	10-19	See	10-19
17%	20-34	Note	20-34
22%	35-49	Below	35-49
28%	50 or more		50 or more

NOTE: All Licensed Programs in Category B will receive the same Discount Percent and associated terms and conditions that are received by the Licensed Programs in Category A but are not added together with Category A Licensed Programs for purposes of determining the Category A discount.

4. PRICE PROTECTION-UPPER LIMIT PERCENT:

First Year: 0%  
Second Year: 7%



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## ASKINFO Major Function Support Enhancements

Today, IBM announces the products that qualify for ASKINFO Major Function Support in 1988.

### Marketing Information

Major Function Support is available to eligible customers who install selected hardware or software products. Support is provided through ASKINFO only.

ASKINFO is an electronic customer support delivery vehicle with functions similar to HONE/EQUAL. There is no charge for using ASKINFO and telephone access is toll free. Customers may use either 1200 bps or 2400 bps line speed to connect to ASKINFO. ASKINFO is a branch-discretionary technical support program.

Major Function Support is a branch-discretionary technical support program. As such, it can be a significant element in demonstrating unique added value and enhancing the productivity of both the customer and the branch systems engineer.

The current releases of the following products qualify for Major Function Support during 1988:

- Office Systems Software
  - DISOSS (MVS and VSE)
  - PROFS
  - Personal Services/TSO
  - Personal Services/CICS
  - Personal Services/36
  - Personal Services/38
  - Personal Services/PC
  - SolutionPac - System/36 Office
  - SolutionPac - VM Office
  - DisplayWrite/370
  - DisplayWrite/36
  - DisplayWrite 4
  - DisplayWrite 4/2
- Systems Software
  - MVS
    - Advanced Function Printing/Express

- System/370 Mid-range Systems
  - Print Services Facility/VSE (PSF/VSE for Advanced Function Printing)
  - IX/370
- System/370 Architecture
  - Enhanced Connectivity Facilities (ECF) (CMS or TSO/E Servers-Requesters)
- Series/1
  - Series/1 EDX SNA Version 2
  - Series/1 Version Migration to EDX Basic Supervisor and Emulator Version 6
- Workstation
  - AIX™ PS/2™
  - OS/2 Standard Edition
  - OS/2 Extended Edition
  - IBM PC 3270 Emulation Program, Version 3
  - IBM PC 3270 Emulation Program Entry
  - IBM PC 3270 Workstation Program
  - IBM 3270-PC High-Level Language Application Programming Interface (HLLAPI)
  - IBM Personal Computer (PC) Local Area Network Program Version 1.2
  - Local Area Network Support Program Version 1.0
  - Advanced Program to Program Communication/PC
  - Distributed Data Manager/PC

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

- Hardware
  - Series/1
  - Workstations
    - IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter
    - IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter II
    - IBM Token-Ring Network PC Adapter/A
    - IBM 2MB Expanded Memory Adapter
    - IBM PS/2 80286 Expanded Memory Adapter/A
    - IBM PS/2 Model 80 Expanded Memory Adapter

Effective January 1, 1988, these products supersede the list of products announced in Marketing Announcement 387-064, dated April 21, 1987.

Major Function Support is an annual program. The products for which Major Function Support is available will be determined by an annual review of marketing plans and technical support requirements conducted by National Technical Support. While support for additional products may be announced throughout the year, annual review and announcement will occur in the fourth quarter of each year.

#### **Support Period**

The support period is six months for all Major Function Support, except for Advanced Function Printing/Express which is three months. ASKINFO hardware support for Series/1 is 12 months.

ASKINFO support may begin plus or minus 90 days from the shipment date, if specified at the time of registration.

#### **Eligibility**

At branch discretion, customers may be registered for Major Function Support when installing one of the previously listed hardware or software products. Only the first installation of a product within an establishment is eligible for support. Installations at Distributed Systems License Option (DSLO) sites are not eligible for Major Function Support.

For Workstation products to be eligible for support, a quantity of 20 or more of a specific product must be acquired from IBM, or a pilot installation must be planned, which, if successful, will result in a quantity of 20 or more being acquired from IBM. IBM Personal Computer customers who purchase in volumes or who participate in pilots which, if successful, result in volume purchases, may also be eligible for participation in the Technical Coordinator Program. Please consult HONE SUPPORTINFO for eligibility requirements.

#### **Registration**

Registration for the Major Function Support products listed in this announcement is through the HONE/Customer Support Programs registration facility and begins January 1, 1988. Customers must be registered by December 31, 1988, to receive support for these products.

#### **Marketing Support**

The following marketing support materials are available to assist in announcing Major Function Support and ASKINFO to customers:

- ASKINFO Customer Brochure (G360-1015)
- A PC Storyboard ASKINFO presentation available at all IBM Customer Centers
- An implementation checklist that may be used to prepare customers for ASKINFO support available on HONE INFOSYSTEM, using the search words **ASKINFO CHECKLIST**.

#### **Planning Information**

The ASKINFO implementation checklist should be used to begin a customer's preparation for ASKINFO. Customers will receive a registration confirmation package which includes an ASKINFO User's Guide with sign-on information and an ASKINFO IBM Customer Agreement.

Customers in IBM Information Network (IN) node cities will receive a local telephone number to call for access to ASKINFO. Customers in non-IN node cities will receive a toll-free telephone number. Existing ASKINFO users with an ASKINFO access diskette received prior to April, 1987, who elect to change from 1200 bps to 2400 bps line speed must request a new ASKINFO access diskette. Specific instructions for requesting this diskette can be found in ASKINFO "NEWS."

Access to ASKINFO is now available 24 hours a day with the exception of the following scheduled maintenance hours (Central Time):

- 5:00 a.m. to 6:00 a.m., Monday through Saturday
- 2:00 a.m. to 3:00 a.m., Tuesday and Thursday
- 10:00 p.m. Saturday to 7:00 a.m., Sunday

*Note:* During most hours of ASKINFO availability, the ASKINFO system is attended. There are, however, periods of unattended availability. Refer to Marketing Announcement 386-150, dated October 21, 1986.

#### **Customer Responsibilities**

To access ASKINFO, the customer must provide a terminal, modem and a switched telephone line. The hardware and software that has been tested for use with ASKINFO is listed in Marketing Announcement 387-227, ASKINFO Functional Enhancements, dated December 15, 1987.

#### **Terms and Conditions**

The terms and conditions for using ASKINFO are in the IBM Customer Agreement included in the registration confirmation package sent to each registered customer. IBM reserves the right to withdraw or make changes to these support programs. Such changes could include, but are not limited to, changes in hours of operation, duration or period of assistance, customer prerequisites, charges or products supported. Support is provided on a best effort basis.

#### **Sponsoring Executive**

M. H. Forster  
Group Director  
Mid-Range Systems Management



# Marketing Announcement

Information Systems Group  
North-Central Marketing Division  
South-West Marketing Division

December 15, 1987

## IBM ASKINFO Functional Enhancements

Effective January 11, 1988, significant functional enhancements to ASKINFO will be implemented. Capabilities added or enhanced include the following:

- Improved question entry capability
- Access to the FLASH, IBM Technical Bulletin and IBM Announcement Letter Data Base
- Elimination of the five-product search limitation
- Multiple item BROWSE capability
- Command line and fast path capability
- INFOExpress question and answer search acknowledgement

### Marketing Information

ASKINFO is an electronic support delivery vehicle with functions similar to HONE EQUAL. There is no charge for using ASKINFO and telephone access is toll free. Customers may use either 1200 bps or 2400 bps line speeds to connect to ASKINFO through the IBM Information Network. ASKINFO support is provided to eligible customers on a branch-to-branch discretionary basis.

ASKINFO functional enhancements will be implemented on January 11, 1988. Customer users accessing ASKINFO will be presented with additional capabilities and enhancements.

### Improved Question Entry Capability

A new question entry editor will allow continuous entry without regard to line endings (auto carrier return) and will provide the ability to scroll for review and edit of questions prior to submission. If the user previously entered text but did not submit the text (for example, in the case of work interruption), the old text will remain available for use or may be erased.

### Access to the FLASH, IBM Technical Bulletin and IBM Announcement Letter Data Base

The data base containing IBM System Center FLASHes, IBM Technical Bulletins and IBM Announcement Letters may be searched and browsed from within ASKINFO. This capability provides customers immediate access to information on new applications and will help broaden the customer's exposure to IBM products and services.

### Elimination of the Five-Product Search Limitation

The current five-product limitation on technical question and answer searches is removed. ASKINFO users may search all product data bases (for which they are enrolled) in a single, efficient search operation.

### Multiple Item BROWSE Capability

Users may select multiple items for browsing from the SEARCH item list. The usability of the results list is greatly increased from the previous single-item limit.

### Command Line and Fast Path Capability

A capability to invoke a command or move quickly from function to function via a fast path command is added for ease of use.

### INFOExpress Question and Answer Search Acknowledgement

For customers who access ASKINFO through INFOExpress, the requirement to search a data base prior to asking a technical question may now be met in either INFOExpress or ASKINFO. Users who search the technical question and answer data base in INFOExpress will no longer need to perform another search in ASKINFO prior to asking a question.

### Marketing Support

The following support materials are available to assist in announcing ASKINFO to customers.

- A PC Storyboard ASKINFO presentation
- ASKINFO marketing brochure (G360-1015)
- ASKINFO Reference Card

**Documentation:** Customers enrolled in ASKINFO on or after January 11, 1988, will receive a new ASKINFO User's Guide that reflects the additions and enhancements to ASKINFO.

**Customer Responsibilities:** To access ASKINFO, the customer must provide a terminal, modem and a switched telephone line. The following hardware and software has been tested for use with ASKINFO. Other equivalent hardware or software may be used if desired; however, IBM can answer connectivity questions related only to the tested configurations.

One of the following terminals is required:

- An IBM Personal Computer\* (not an IBM PCjr™) or IBM Personal System/2™ with the following minimum requirements:
  - At least 128KB of memory
  - One dual-sided diskette drive

- Monochrome display adapter or color/graphic adapter, attachment cable and 80-column video monitor
- Asynchronous communications adapter or internal modem
- Cable conforming to the EIA RS-232-C standard.

™ Trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation.

- \* Minimum storage and DOS release requirements may vary by IBM Personal Computer type and model.

Customers are not required to purchase communications software in order to access ASKINFO. As part of the registration confirmation package, customers will be sent a "self-booting" IBM Personal Computer diskette that contains the required communications software and the DOS command interpreter.

Full-function DOS is required for customers who intend to use the IBM personal computer for functions other than ASKINFO access.

- IBM RT PC™ Model 6150 or 6151
  - IBM AT® Serial/Parallel Adapter or 4-Port RS-232-C Asynchronous Adapter (Model 6151 ONLY).
  - Modem cable (dependent on the communications port used).

Communication Port	Modem Cable	
	Part Number	Option Number
Native S1 or S2 (6150 only)	6298240	6294704
4-Port RS-232-C Async Adapter	6298240	6294704
IBM AT Serial/Parallel Adapter	6137408	6450217

- IBM RT PC Advanced Interactive Executive (AIX)™ Operating System and Virtual Resource Manager
- Asynchronous Terminal Emulation (included as part of the AIX Operating System)
- IBM 3101 Display Model 23 or Model 881 with EIA cable (5640736)
- IBM 3161, 3163 or 3164 Display Station Models 11 or 12 with EIA cable (6343332)

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

One of the following full-duplex, asynchronous modems, or equivalent, is required.

- An IBM 5841 or 5842 external at 1200 bps
- An IBM 5842 external at 2400 bps
- An IBM 4805 internal at 1200 bps\*
- An IBM 4829 internal at 1200 or 2400 bps\*

- \* Not supported for RT PC.

For auto-dial capability, the modem must support the IBM AT command set. Manual dialing is required for non-AT command set compatible modems.

Selection of an IBM Personal Computer as a terminal, with the modems listed above, provides automatic dialing and log-on functions. Other terminals require manual interactive screen responses to complete connection and log-on.

### Terms and Conditions

The terms and conditions for using ASKINFO are in the IBM Customer Agreement included in the registration confirmation package sent to each registered customer. IBM reserves the right to withdraw or make changes to these support programs. Such changes could include, but are not limited to, changes in hours of operation, duration or period of assistance, customer prerequisites, charges or products supported. Support is provided on a best-efforts basis.

### Sponsoring Executive

M. H. Forster  
Group Director  
Mid-Range Systems Management

## Summary Only Announcements

### 287-552 IBM Licensed Programs Maintenance Extension (*HONE only*)

Central Service program support for VM3812 Pageprinter VM Support (5798-DTE) is extended beyond December 31, 1987. Program services will be available until December 31, 1988.

Central Service Contact:

IBM Product Support Center  
IBM Corporation  
P. O. Box 152560  
Irving, TX 75015-2560  
Telephone: (800) 237-5511

### 487-116 Withdrawal of Selected Technical Update Series Videotapes (*HONE only*)

Effective January 1, 1988, the following Technical Update videotapes will be withdrawn:

Videotape Name	Course Code
MVS/SP 1.3 Overview	34501
MVS/SP 1.3 JES3 Update	34502
MVS/SP 1.3 JES3 Overview and Installation	34503
MVS/SP 1.3 Global Resources	
Serialization Considerations	34504
Introduction to SPF Dialog Manager	34505
IMS/VS Release 1.3 Update Introduction	34509
IMS/VS Release 1.3 DASD Logging	34510
IMS/VS Release 1.3 Additional Enhancements	34511
IMS/VS Release 1.3 Fastpath Facility	34512
MVS Performance with 3880-11, 3380, 3350 Paging Configurations	34514
Multiuse Communication Loop	
Accessory Operation	34516
3380 Installation Considerations	34517
3380 Performance Considerations	34518
SQL/DS Performance and Tuning	34526
System/Network Control Center Installation	34531
Using TPNS to Test Online Systems	34532
SMP4 to SMP/E Transition	34547
Installation of Personal Services/PC with DISOSS	34550
Tailoring Personal Services/36 to Communicate with DISOSS	34551

### 487-117 Technical Update Series Videotapes -- New Ordering Procedures (*HONE only*)

Effective January 1, 1988, the ordering procedures for the Technical Update Series videotapes will be changed. Customers may order Technical Update Series videotapes directly from their IBM branch office or through IBM Direct-Education at 800-IBM-2468. The videotapes will no longer be available in BETA format. Section 3 of the January issue of the Catalog of IBM Education outlines the new ordering procedures for the Technical Update Series videotapes.

Newly announced videos will continue to be distributed automatically to subscribers of DAPS Code 1906. In addition, customers who currently participate in the Technical Update Series videotape subscription service will continue to receive their tapes through SRA.

Available Technical Update Series videotapes are listed in the January 1988 Catalog of IBM Education (G320-1244).

**487-118 RACF Installation (H3837) (HONE only on December 1, 1987)**

This classroom course of one and one-half days presents information related to the installation and technical support of RACF in either an MVS or a VM environment. Topics covered include the installation process, RACF utilities, recovery, and tuning.

This course is the standard version of the RPQ course E3670. If a student has already attended E3670, there is no need to take this course.

*Tuition*

\$420.00

*Availability*

January 1988

*Duration*

1 1/2 days

For schedule, location, and enrollment information, call IBM Direct-Education at 800-IBM-2468.

*Objectives*

After completion of this course, the student should be able to:

- Describe the steps to install RACF under MVS
- Describe the steps to install RACF under VM
- Choose the appropriate RACF utility to maintain the RACF data base
- Select appropriate performance options.

**487-119 Discover/ Education Course Code Changes (HONE only)**

Effective immediately, the following Discover/ Education Series course codes for the courses listed below have changed. These six courses were announced June 30, 1987 in the Education Announcements listed:

	New	Old
Discover/ IBM System/36 Introduction and Operations (Education Announcement 487-060)	Z1300	S2685
Discover/ IBM System/36 Professional and Office Support (Education Announcement 487-061)	Z1303	S2687
Discover/ IBM System/36 Systems Design and Implementation (Education Announcement 487-062)	Z1302	S2688
Discover/ IBM System/36 Introduction to Data Communications (Education Announcement 487-063)	Z1304	S2686
Discover/ DOS Introduction and Operations for IBM Personal Computer and IBM Personal System/2™ (Education Announcement 487-064)	Z4001	P1002
Discover/ DOS Implementation for IBM Personal Computer and IBM Personal System/2 (Education Announcement 487-065)	Z4002	P1003

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

**Price Changes for IBM Education Courses (HONE only)**

Effective April 1, 1988, the prices for selected IBM education courses will be increased.

In accordance with the applicable IBM agreements, amendments and/or supplements, the new prices will be in effect for courses beginning on or after April 1, 1988.

The price list showing the old and new course prices follows:

Course	Title	Old Price	New Price
W9898	Data Security Planning	\$680	\$775
W9912	Disaster Recovery Planning	731	775
W9918	Operations Analysis & Management		
	Controls	950	980
W9924	Project Management	950	980
W9927	Data Processing Operations		
	Management	950	980
W9929	Effectiveness Skills for I/S		
	Professionals	675	775
W9930	Business Systems Planning		
	Implementation	950	980
W9936	Capacity Planning for Managers	860	885
W9937	Application Program Testing	590	675
W9939	Top Down Software Design	920	980
W9941	Service Level Agreement	700	775
W9942	Top Down Requirements Analysis	810	885
W9943	Ensuring I/S Quality	675	775
W9948	Information Center Management	675	775
W9949	Consulting Skills for I/S		
	Professionals	675	775
W9950	Project Management II	725	775
W9954	Financial Strategies for I/S		
	Management	675	775
W9957	Managing Telecommunications		
	Systems	700	775



## ANNOUNCEMENT LETTER CORRECTIONS AND CLARIFICATIONS

The HONE version has been corrected.

### **286-373      Screen Definition Facility/Customer Information Control System OS/VS Version 1 Release 5 (Announced on September 8, 1986)**

Several corrections are required to the external letter under the Planning and Ordering Information sections for ordering Release 4. Please refer to the text areas described below for more details.

1. Following the heading Planning Information, a sentence has been added.
2. Following the heading Ordering Information, two sentences have been added.
3. In the Ordering Information section, a new Release 5 heading preceding the existing table, and a new Release 4 heading with a table has been added following these headings:

Basic Machine-readable Material  
Optional Machine-readable Material  
Licensed Publications and Microfiche.

4. Following the last item of (3.) above, a new heading Unlicensed Publications and a table is to be added, followed by a new heading Optional Machine-readable Material and a table.
5. Following the heading Unlicensed Documentation, the General Information manual has been deleted.
6. In the Terms and Conditions section, following the heading Program Currency, the first sentence has been reworded.

### **187-197      IBM 3194 Control Program Microcode, Release 2.1 (announced via HONE on October 20, 1987) (Announced on October 20, 1987)**

Under the *Publications* heading, a new paragraph has been added indicating the availability of a Technical Newsletter (SN30-3558) that updates the reference manual (SK2T-0311) to the Release 2.1 level.

### **287-514      Repackaging of Selected IBM Integrated Banking Applications, Volume Procurement Amendment, and Reduced Conversion Charges (announced via HONE on November 3, 1987) Announced on November 3, 1987**

In the *Attachment Information* section, the name of attachment 287-514-2C\* Z125-4070 has been corrected to read, "IBM IBA Licensed Programs VPA to Agreement for IBM Licensed Programs." This exhibit, included in the November 3, 1987, printed Announcement Letter package, is not to be used. A corrected version is available from the DAWN system.

### **287-498      IBM Operating System/2™ Availability (announced via HONE on November 3, 1987) Announced on November 3, 1987**

In the external letter, immediately preceding the heading Installability, add the following two paragraphs and table:

End-user service is provided through a service coordinator. The service coordinator must be registered in HONE at the time the program license for OS/2 is acquired. See Marketing Announcement 385-166, dated December 17, 1985, for additional coordinator information.

One copy of the *Service Coordinator Guide* and the ServiceLine diskette must be ordered for each service coordinator registered. See your IBM marketing representative for additional copies of the *Service Coordinator Guide*. Form and part numbers are:

Form	Part	Part Name
G68X-2306	68X2306	IBM Operating System/2 Service Coordinator Guide
ZV38-0350	None	IBM Operating System/2 ServiceLine Diskette (5.25 inch, 360KB)
ZV38-0351	None	IBM Operating System/2 ServiceLine Diskette (3.5 inch, 720KB)

## Internal Summary Numeric Index

187-231	IBM Series/1, 72 Megabyte Disk Drive Features ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
187-232	IBM 3191 Display Station Models A40/AD0 and B40/BD0 ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
187-233	IBM 3197 Display Station Model D40 ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
187-234	IBM 3820 Page Printer Performance Enhancement
187-235	IBM 5340 System/34 MESs Withdrawal from Marketing
187-236	IBM 3505 Card Reader and IBM 3525 Card Punch Withdrawal from Marketing
187-237	Enhancements for the IBM 4683 Model 2 Attachment Adapter Kit
187-238	IBM 4683 Selected Special Features Withdrawal from Marketing
187-239	Withdrawal of Selected Store Systems Products from Marketing
187-240	IBM 4683 Point of Sale Terminal Models, Displays, and Enhancements
287-543	PROFESSIONAL CADAM <sup>1</sup> Release 2.0 ( <i>announced via HONE on November 24, 1987</i> )
287-544	MICRO CADAM <sup>1</sup> Repackaged and Repriced ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
287-545	Cooperative Software Program - Connex ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
287-546	IBM System 36/38 Workstation Emulation Program, Version 1.0 Availability ( <i>announced via HONE on December 1, 1987</i> )
287-547	IBM System/88 Operating System Data Encryption Algorithms Specify Option
287-548	IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing
287-549	IBM Programs Withdrawal from Marketing
287-550	IBM Licensed Programs Withdrawal from Marketing and Discontinuance of Program Services ( <i>announced via HONE on December 8, 1987</i> )
287-551	Virtual Machine Inter-System Facilities Release 2 Available
287-552	IBM Licensed Programs Maintenance Extension ( <i>HONE only</i> )
287-553	DISOSS/370 Version 3 Release 4 Availability with Additional Function
287-554	IBM Inter-System Control Facility/PC Available
287-555	IBM Inter-System Control Facility for MVS/XA and MVS/370 Availability
287-556	NetView/Access Services Version 1 Release 1.0 SNA Application Monitor Version 1 Release 1.2 Available
287-557	IBM 4680 Operating System Version 1 Release 3 Enhancements and Availability
287-558	IBM 4680 BASIC Version 1 Release 2 Availability
287-559	IBM 4680 General Sales Application Terminal Offline Feature
287-560	IBM 4680 Support for COBOL
287-561	Print Services Facility/Virtual Machine Version 1 Release 1.1
287-562	Sonoran Sans Serif Expanded Sonoran Sans Serif Condensed Monotype Garamond Fonts for Advanced Function Printing One-Time Charge
287-563	IBM Local Area Network Asynchronous Connection Server Program Availability and Additional Function

- 287-564** IBM 4680 General Sales Application Version 1 Release 2
- 287-565** Program Offering, Print Services Facility/36 Version 1 Release 1
- 287-566** Remote PrintManager Update Provides IBM Personal System/2™ Support
- 287-567** Get Set for Writing to Read™ School Kit Available
- 287-568** IBM Data Base Relational Application Directory for VM/System Product (DBRAD/VM) Program Offering Available
- 387-215** Personal System/2™ Model 80 (8580-311), Quietwriter® III Printer (5202-001), Operating System/2™ Standard Edition and Selected Features Available through the IBM Education Order Center (*announced via HONE on November 24, 1987*)
- 387-216** Withdrawal from Marketing
- 387-217** IBM 3299 Terminal Multiplexer Maintenance Agreement Service
- 387-218** IBM System/88 Trial Program Extended
- 387-219** Revised Exhibit-Alternative Certification for IBM Machines
- 387-220** IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner VPA Withdrawal
- 387-221** Price Changes IBM 3820 Page Printer
- 387-222** Price Changes IBM Store Application Environment Licensed Program
- 387-223** Price Change IBM 3687 Checkout Scanner
- 387-224** InfoWindow Support for Personal System/2™ Models 50 and 60
- 387-225** Withdrawal from Marketing Program Service Changes
- 387-226** ASKINFO Major Function Support Enhancements
- 387-227** IBM ASKINFO Functional Enhancements
- 487-116** Withdrawal of Selected Technical Update Series Videotapes (*HONE only*)
- 487-117** Technical Update Series Videotapes -- New Ordering Procedures (*HONE only*)
- 487-118** RACF Installation (H3837) (*HONE only on December 1, 1987*)
- 487-119** Discover/ Education Course Code Changes (*HONE only*)
- 487-120** Price Changes for IBM Education Courses (*HONE only*)

<sup>1</sup> Trademark of CADAM INC

™ Trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.

® Registered trademark of the International Business Machines Corporation.